ESKER VSI-FAX®

Installation and Administration Guide

6.1

ESKER®
Document Process Automation

www.esker.com

VSI-FAX Version 6.1 Issued April 2009

Esker S.A., 10 rue des Émeraudes, 69006 Lyon, France Tel: +33 (0)4 72 83 46 46 • Fax: +33 (0)4 72 83 46 40/41 • info@esker.fr • www.esker.fr

Esker, Inc., 1212 Deming Way, Suite 350, Madison, WI 53717 USA Tel: +1 608-828-6000 • Fax: +1 608-828-6001 • info@esker.com • www.esker.com

Esker Australia Pty Ltd. (Lane Cove - NSW) • Tel: +61 (0)2 8596 5100 • info@esker.com.au • www.esker.com.au

Esker GmbH (München) • Tel: +49 (0)89 700 8870• info@esker.de • www.esker.de

Esker Italia SRL (Milano) • Tel: +39 02 89 20 03 03 • info@esker.it • www.esker.it

Esker Ibérica, S.L. (Madrid) • Tel: +34 91 552 9265 • info@esker.es • www.esker.es

Esker UK Ltd. (Derby) • Tel: +44 (0)1332 54 8181 • info@esker.co.uk • www.esker.co.uk

Esker, Inc. (Stillwater, OK) • Tel: +1.405-533-5500 • info@esker.com • www.esker.com

Esker, Inc. (Lake Forest, CA) • Tel: +1 608-828-6000 • info@esker.com • www.esker.com

Table of Contents

What's New in this Version?

Extended OS support

New platforms are supported for the server installation including Windows Server 2008 32 or 64 bits and Red Hat Entreprise 5.

For the complete list of supported platforms for each VSI-FAX server and client component, refer to Supported Platforms and Equipment (page 11).

Extended Brooktrout support

VSI-FAX 6.1 can now be installed with Brooktrout TR1034 boards, TruFax boards or SR140 software on:

- Windows Server 2008 systems either 32-bit or 64 bits
- Red Hat Entreprise 5

For the complete list of which Brooktrout fax solution can be set up on which operating systems, refer to *Dialogic Brooktrout fax boards and drivers* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation.

More fax boards supported

VSI-FAX 6.1 integrates Dialogic Brooktrout SDK 6.0. You can use the new version with the new TR1034 or TruFax Brooktrout boards that require Brooktrout SDK 6.0.

To set up VSI-FAX with a fax board, refer to *Fax boards and fax drivers installation* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation.

Refer to *Recommended modems and fax boards* in the VSI-FAX Recommended Modems and Fax Boards documentation for a complete list of the supported fax boards and modems.

Brooktrout SR140 software on Unix/Linux

Brooktrout SR140 software is now supported on Unix/Linux platforms. For the installation, refer to *Brooktrout SR140 installation and configuration on Unix/Linux* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation.

VSI-FAX clients extended OS support

LanFax now supports Windows Server 2008 and Windows Vista.

Outlook Client, MailMerge Client, CoverMaker now support Windows Vista 64 bits.

For the complete list of supported platforms, refer to Supported Platforms and Equipment (page 11).

VSI-FAX Outlook Client

VSI-FAX Windows Client now supports Outlook 2007.

New Fax on Demand device for failover

VSI-FAX 6.1 now comes with two different devices to send faxes via Fax on Demand:

- FoDC is the main Fax on Demand device that already existed in the previous version,
- FoDC2 is a new backup Fax on Demand device used when the FoDC fails to send the faxes.

If FoDC fails because the main Fax on Demand server (by default, the server located in the US) is unreachable, VSI-FAX automatically redirects the fax queue to FoDC2 that points to a different Fax on Demand server (by default, the server located in Europe).

For more information, refer to Managing failover with the Fax on Demand Connector (page 57).

New version of JetPCL

VSI-FAX 6.1 includes version 9.51 of the JetPCL converter from Tech Know Systems.

The PCLTOTIF formatter, which uses JetPCL to convert standard text, PCL 5e, PCL 6 into TIFF, has been rebuilt with the new version of JetPCL. It provides various bug fixes and better performances. To learn about PCL files' conversion through VSI-FAX, refer to Fax Imaging (page 71).

New print drivers

VSI-FAX Server and VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client come with new print drivers to allow native application printing on 64-bits platforms. For more information on the way you can send faxes directly from your applications using VSI-FAX printers, refer to Print-to-fax (page 181).

Improved registration portal

The registration Web site from which you retrieve your VSI-FAX license (serial number and activation key) offers a more intuitive interface and now allows you to obtain a license for any other Esker products . For more information, refer to VSI-FAX 6.1 registration.

Support of Office 2007

You can now fax Microsoft Office 2007 documents (.docx or .xlsx files) with the VSI-FAX server, either by printing the document directly from the Microsoft Office 2007 application or by faxing the document from LanFax Windows client.

Support of Acrobat 7 and above

The PDFTOTIF converter is now compatible with Acrobat 7 and above versions.

VSI-FAX Pre-Installation

VSI-FAX Pre-Installation

Read this information before beginning your VSI-FAX installation.

What you will need

You will need the following:

- Installation CD
- VSI-FAX Installation and Administration documentation (available in HTML format or in printed version on the VSI-FAX CD at `\docs\vsifax_instadm.pdf`)
- Your VSI-FAX PIN/secret code(s), given to you upon purchase. This is required to register your software on the Web and obtain your Serial Number and Activation Key. Follow the instructions on the registration card provided with the software to obtain your Serial Number and Activation Key if you have not already received this information by email.

Verify

- Is the target host machine a supported Windows, Unix, or Linux platform and your system compatible with VSI-FAX System Requirements? See Supported Platforms and Equipment.
- Is TCP/IP running on the target host machine, and a properly configured network card installed?
- Is at least one supported fax device (e.g., modem or fax board) installed and configured on the host machine? For a full listing of supported fax devices, see Supported fax devices and accessories.
- Do you have Administrator access to your system?
- Does the machine from which you are installing have access to a local or networked CD-ROM drive?
- Do you have a multi-page TIFF viewer installed on your system in order to view faxes received on the server? For instance, Wang Imaging for Windows is provided on the Windows installation CD-ROM. Similar programs are available for Unix and Linux platforms.
- For using a client with VSI-FAX, is a VSI-FAX Server accessible via a network connection?
- Are you using the proper modem cabling? For detailed information about modem cabling, go to the knowledge base at http://www.esker.com/support.
- Have you stopped all existing processes running on serial ports to which you will connect your fax devices?

Installing libstdc++.so.5 on Red Hat Enterprise 4 or 5

VSI-FAX Server requires that the libstdc++.so.5 library be installed on your Operating System to function properly.

The VSI-FAX Server installation program checks the library version, so you might be prompted to install the libstdc++.so.5 library during the server installation. In this case, cancel the installation, then install the libstdc++.so.5 library:

- For Red Hat 4.0, install the **compat-libstdc++-33-3.2.3-47.3.i386.rpm** RPM package that you can find on the CD2 in the RedHat\RPMS folder.

- For Red Hat 5.0, install the **compat-libstdc++-33-3.2.3-61.i386.rpm** RPM package that you can find on the CD2 or DVD in the Server folder.

Next, perform the VSI-FAX Server installation.

Other considerations

This section describes several other items for you to take into consideration before installing VSI-FAX.

Port 2996 and 2539 availability

VSI-FAX uses TCP ports 2996 and 2539 to communicate with the fax server. You must ensure that no other application or device is using these ports. You can check this by using the `netstat -an` command and checking the output for the presence of these port numbers.

See also
Refer to your operating system documentation for port assignment information.

Serial port assignments

VSI-FAX may communicate with your various fax devices (modems or fax boards) via serial ports on your system. You should know the name and physical location of the serial ports you are going to use to install your fax devices. Serial port names are usually found in the `/dev` directory on Unix and Linux systems and are named COM1 through COM9 in Windows.

See also
Go to the Knowledge Base at http://www.esker.com/support for detailed information about serial port compatibility.

Annotated fax server information form

This server information form includes detailed descriptions of the information required for a successful fax server installation. Esker strongly suggests that you print or photocopy the blank Fax Server Information Form, fill it out, and have it nearby when you install the fax server. Furthermore, if you require technical support to resolve an installation problem, you may be asked to supply this information to our technical support staff.

Cover page information

This company information appears on your fax cover pages.

Information	Description
`Company Name`	Your company name as you want it to appear on your cover pages
`Address 1`	First line of your company address
`Address 2`	Second line of your company address
`Address 3`	Third line of your company address. In the US, this is typically the city, state and zip code
`Country`	Your country as you want it to appear on your cover pages
`Voice phone`	Your voice telephone number as you want it to appear on your cover pages
`FAX phone`	Your fax telephone number as you want it to appear on your cover pages
`Email`	Your Internet email address as you want it to appear on your cover pages

Dialing properties

This information is used to set up local dialing and station identification information. Some of this information appears on your sent fax headers.

Information	Description
Country Code	Your country code. This is used to dial international fax numbers. In the US, this is typically 1.
Long Distance Access #	Number you enter to dial long distance telephone numbers. In the US, this is typically 1.
Area Code	Your local telephone area code
Local Number Length	Number of digits in a local phone number. In the US, this is typically 7. Local number length is used to determine whether the number being dialed is local or long distance.
Dial Prefix	Number you enter to access an outside telephone line. In the US, this is typically 9, if required.
Dial Suffix	This is typically an internal accounting code used for billing long distance telephone usage to the proper department or cost center.
Called Subscriber ID (CSI)	This is typically your outgoing fax number and company name. This string can be a maximum of 20 characters long. For best compatibility, restrict your CSI string to letters, numerals, plus signs, and spaces.
Transmitting Station ID (TSI)	This is typically your outgoing fax number. This string can be a maximum of 20 characters long. For best compatibility, restrict your TSI string to letters, numerals, plus signs, and spaces.
	The TSI string is used to negotiate with other fax devices and normally appears in the fax header at the top of each faxed page. Because the TSI will appear on the header even if the rest of the fax doesn't get sent, it is an especially good practice to make the TSI string your fax number. That way, people can fax you back in the event of problems.
	Note: Recent telecommunications laws in some countries (e.g., U.S.) now require that your TSI appear on any unsolicited fax transmissions.

Internet email servers

Internet email services are used to send faxes directly from email clients and route received faxes to users' email inboxes.

Important

When setting up your POP3 Email-to-Fax gateway email account, do not use an email account that receives normal email. The fax server will try to process all received email on this account as an inbound fax. This can cause drastically degraded fax routing performance or unexpected application behavior. Furthermore, the fax server will remove email messages from this inbox. For these reasons, Esker strongly suggests setting up email user, such as autofax, for your POP3 fax routing and ensuring that email user autofax is left off distribution lists at your company

Information	Description
SMTP Server Name	Fully qualified domain name or IP address of an outbound Internet mail server. VSI-FAX uses this server to provide fax transmission notification to network clients and to send faxes as email attachments.
SMTP From Name	Default SMTP mailbox used to distribute fax transmissions. Default is user vsifax.
POP3 Server Name	Fully qualified domain name or IP address of the mail server where the POP3 user account resides.
POP3 User Name	POP3 user account for use with the Email-to-Fax gateway integration. The default is user autofax.
POP3 Password	Password for the POP3 user account.

Fax modem properties

This information is used to configure supported fax modems for use with VSI-FAX.

Information	Description
`Queue name`	Short name for this fax modem device.
`Description`	Short descriptive name for this fax modem device.
`COM port`	Serial port this fax modem device will use to communicate with VSI-FAX. Ensure that no other modem is using the same port.

Prepare

Register your VSI-FAX software to get your Serial Number and Activation Key.

1. Go to http://www.esker.com.
2. Click Register your product at the bottom right of the Home page.
3. Enter the requested information. Refer to the VSI-FAX 6.1 registration documentation for more details. Upon submission, you will receive the Serial Number and Activation Key by email.

See also

For Windows installation, refer to Installing VSI-FAX Server on Windows (page 19).

For Linux installation, see Installing VSI-FAX Server on Unix/Linux, Sample Unix and Linux Mount Commands, and Fax Server Information Form.

If you require further assistance, contact your Esker Technical Support representative.

Supported Platforms and Equipment

Supported Platforms and Equipment

This section provides detailed technical information about:

- Qualified platforms and detailed system requirements for each VSI-FAX application (e.g., fax server, clients, development tools)
- Supported fax devices (i.e., modems and fax boards)
- Support for Windows Terminal Services environments
- Support for other equipment (e.g., Ethernet Terminal Servers, Port Expanders, etc.)

Note
The information in this section was correct at publication time. However, you can always access the latest supported platforms and equipment information in the support area of the Esker web site at http://www.esker.com.

What is a platform?

A platform is a specific combination of operating system and Central Processing Unit (CPU). Many commercial operating systems run on both Intel and RISC CPUs. VSI-FAX does not always support all of these combinations. In order to avoid confusion, this documentation routinely specifies entire supported platforms (i.e., operating system and CPU) rather than just a supported operating system.

VSI-FAX Server

UNIX Platforms

Hardware

The Unix/Linux platforms on which you install the VSI-FAX Server must meet the following minimum requirements in terms of hardware:

Hardware Requirements	Required Minimum
CPU	RISC 90 MHz or higher, Intel 300 MHz or higher
RAM	128 MB (256 MB recommended)
Hard Disk Space	100 MB permanent disk space plus 100 MB additional temporary space required during installation
Network Interface Card	10baseT or higher, configured with the latest drivers for your platform

Qualified and recommended platforms

The VSI-FAX server has been qualified on the following Unix/Linux operating systems:

Qualified platforms	Operating System Version(s)
Sun Solaris SPARC	9 (32-bits or SPARC v8 compatible)
Sun Solaris (Intel)	10
IBM AIX	5.1 and 6.1
HP-UX	11iv1 (B.11.11)
SCO OpenServer	5.0.7 and 6.0
SCO UnixWare	7.1.3
Red Hat Enterprise	3, 4 and 5

Companion software - TCP/IP

TCP/IP must be running on the target host machine and a network card must be installed.

Fax on Demand Connector

Uses an HTTPs Internet Connection, no proxy server.

Windows Platforms

Hardware

The Windows platforms on which you install the VSI-FAX server must meet the following minimum requirements in terms of hardware:

Hardware Requirements	Required Minimum
CPU	Pentium III 450 MHz or higher
RAM	128 MB (256 MB recommended)
Hard Disk Space	120 MB permanent disk space plus 100 MB additional temporary space required during installation
Network Interface Card	10baseT or higher, configured with the latest drivers for your platform

Qualified and recommended platforms

The VSI-FAX server has been qualified on the following Windows operating systems:

Qualified platforms	Operating System Version(s)
Microsoft Windows	Server 2003 R2 SP2 (32-bit version only) or Windows Server 2003 SP2 (32-bit Standard Edition, Enterprise Edition, or Datacenter Edition). Server 2008 SP1 (32-bit and 64-bit Standard Edition, Enterprise Edition, or Datacenter Edition).

Companion software - TCP/IP

TCP/IP must be running on the target host machine and a network card must be installed.

Fax on Demand Connector

Uses an HTTPS Internet Connection, no proxy server.

Evaluation

If you are evaluating VSI-FAX, you do not have to install a physical fax device (modem or fax board). You can use the Demonstration Driver (also called loopback) to evaluate the software.

VSI-FAX Server administration

These are the detailed system requirements for installing and using the VSI-FAX Server Administration application.

Supported Platforms	Operating System Version(s)
Microsoft Windows	Server 2003 R2 SP2 (32-bit version only) or Windows Server 2003 SP2 (32-bit Standard Edition, Enterprise Edition, or Datacenter Edition). Server 2008 SP1 (32-bit and 64-bit Standard Edition, Enterprise Edition, or Datacenter Edition). XP SP3 (32-bit version only) . Vista SP1 (32-bit and 64-bit versions) .

Hardware Requirements	Required Minimum
CPU	Pentium II 300 MHz
RAM	64 MB (128 MB recommended)
Hard Disk Space	Cell 5 MB permanent disk space plus 10 MB additional temporary space required during installation

Software Requirements	Required Minimum
TCP/IP Connectivity	As provided by your platform
VSI-FAX Server1 (*)	6.1
Microsoft Management Console (MMC)	1.1 (1.2 recommended)

(*) A VSI-FAX Server must be properly installed, configured, and accessible via a network connection.

Outlook Client

These are the detailed system requirements for installing and using the VSI Outlook Client.

Supported Platforms	Operating System Version(s)
Microsoft Windows	XP SP3 (32-bit version only) . Vista SP1 (32-bit and 64-bit versions) .

Supported Client	Client Version(s)
Outlook	Outlook 2000 Outlook XP Outlook 2003 Outlook 2007

Hardware Requirements	Required Minimum
CPU	Pentium II 300 MHz
RAM	32 MB (64 - 128 MB recommended)
Hard Disk Space	10 MB permanent disk space plus 8 MB additional temporary space required during installation

Software Requirements	Required Minimum
TCP/IP Connectivity	As provided by your platform
VSI-FAX Server (1)	6.1
Microsoft Outlook(2)	2000

(1) A VSI-FAX Server must be properly installed, configured, and accessible via a network connection.

(2) The Outlook Client is best used with Outlook in Corporate or Workgroup mode in conjunction with a Microsoft Exchange Server. This configuration provides access to the fax message form published on the Microsoft Exchange Server.

While you can use the Outlook Client with Outlook in standalone Internet e-mail only mode, you will have to manually enter your fax recipient information using MAPI syntax each time you send a fax.

See also
Refer to the VSI-FAX Outlook Client help for additional information about various ways to send faxes using the Outlook Client.

LanFax Windows Client

Note
With version 6.0 and up, VSI-FAX offers a new LanFax™ Windows Client with enhanced usability to replace VSI-FAX Windows Client. VSI-FAX Windows Client remains available on the CD-ROM as an unsupported client.

The computer you're installing the LanFax Windows Client on must meet the following requirements:

Supported Platforms	Operating System Version(s)
Microsoft Windows	XP SP3 (32-bit version only) . Vista SP1 (32-bit and 64-bit versions) . Server 2003 R2 SP2 (32-bit version only) or Windows Server 2003 SP2 (32-bit Standard Edition, Enterprise Edition, or Datacenter Edition) with Terminal Services or not. Server 2008 SP1 (32-bit and 64-bit Standard Edition, Enterprise Edition, or Datacenter Edition) with Terminal Services or not.

Hardware Requirements	Required Minimum
Hard Disk Space	15 MB

Software Requirements	Recommended
HTTP connectivity	As provided by your platform to provide connectivity to the VSI-FAX Server
VSI-FAX Server	6.1

The LanFax Windows Client is a front end to the VSI-FAX Server and provides an easy way for you to use VSI-FAX on your desktop. The LanFax Windows Client lets you: send faxes, save drafts of outgoing faxes, view sent faxes through an Outbox, view received faxes through an Inbox, manage phonebooks and customize fax headers and cover pages.

Using the LanFax Windows Client you can send faxes in one of two methods:

- Send a fax directly from the LanFax Windows Client.
- Send a fax from an application that allows you to print on LanFax Windows Client Printer. This is known as print to fax.

See also
Refer to the VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client help for more information on installing and using the LanFax Windows Client.

CoverMaker

These are the detailed system requirements for installing and using VSI CoverMaker.

Supported Platforms	Operating System Version(s)
Microsoft Windows	XP SP3 (32-bit version only) . Vista SAP1 (32-bit and 64-bit versions) .

Hardware Requirements	Required Minimum
CPU	Pentium II 300 MHz
RAM	16 MB (32 - 128 MB recommended)
Hard Disk Space	3 MB

Software Requirements	Required Minimum
TCP/IP Connectivity (1)	As provided by your platform.
VSI-FAX Server (1)	6.1

(1) A properly installed and configured VSI-FAX Server must be accessible via a network connection in order to save your fax cover pages on the fax server so that they can be used for faxing. However, you can use CoverMaker on a standalone (i.e., non-networked) computer while designing your cover pages.

Note
Users must have write access to the vsicover directory to be able to save their cover pages.

MailMerge client

Supported Platforms	Operating System Version(s)
Microsoft Windows	XP SP3 (32-bit version only) . Vista SP1 (32-bit and 64-bit versions) .

Hardware Requirements	Required Minimum
CPU	Pentium II 300 MHz
RAM	16 MB (32 - 128 MB recommended)
Hard Disk Space	3 MB

Supported Client	Required Minimum
Microsoft Office	Office XP Office 2003 Office 2007
VSI-FAX Server	6.1

Note
The MailMerge Client is not designed to work with Microsoft Access.

Software Development Kit (SDK)

These are the detailed system requirements for installing and using VSI Software Development Kit (SDK).

Supported Platforms	Operating System Version(s)
Microsoft Windows	Server 2003 R2 SP2 (32-bit version only) or Windows Server 2003 SP2 (32-bit Standard Edition, Enterprise Edition, or Datacenter Edition) with Terminal Services or not. Server 2008 SP1 (32-bit and 64-bit Standard Edition, Enterprise Edition, or Datacenter Edition) with Terminal Services or not. XP SP3 (32-bit version only) . Vista SP1 (32-bit and 64-bit versions) .

Hardware Requirements	Required Minimum
CPU	Pentium II 300 MHz
RAM	32 MB (64 - 128 MB recommended)
Hard Disk Space	43 MB (50 MB recommended)

Software Requirements	Required Minimum
TCP/IP Connectivity (1)	As provided by your platform.
VSI-FAX Server (1)	6.1
Development Environment	Microsoft Visual Basic 6.0, Visual C++ 6.0

(1) Connection to a VSI-FAX Server is not required but is useful for testing and debugging your applications.

Supported fax devices and accessories

This section provides information about the supported fax boards, modems and accessories (e.g., port expanders, terminal services).

Recommended fax boards and modems

In order to get maximum performance and reliability from your fax server, Esker recommends fax boards and modems from these manufacturers:

- Dialogic (www.dialogic.com) (formerly Eicon Networks and Cantata Technology).
- Multi-Tech Systems (www.multitech.com)

Refer to *Recommended modems and fax boards* in the VSI-FAX Recommended Modems and Fax Boards documentation for a complete list of the supported boards and modems.

Note
The Esker web site always provides the most current fax device compatibility information. Go to http://www.esker.com/support for additional information.

Dialogic Brooktrout fax boards and drivers

VSI-FAX supports the following fax solutions from Dialogic Corporation:

- Dialogic Brooktrout TR1034 and TruFax boards
- Dialogic Brooktrout SR140™ Fax Software for Fax over IP.

Brooktrout TR1034 boards, TruFax boards, and SR140 Fax Software are supported in Windows and Red Hat Linux environments.

Refer to *Dialogic Brooktrout fax boards and drivers* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation for the list of Windows and Linux systems these fax solutions have been tested on, and for more information about using Dialogic Brooktrout hardware and software with VSI-FAX.

Note
Dialogic Brooktrout TR114™ and legacy Brooktrout TruFax boards are no longer supported as from VSI-FAX version 6.1.

Dialogic Corporation provides detailed technical information about their fax products on their web site at http://www.dialogic.com.

This web site also presents excellent information about the advantages of fax boards over fax modems, the relative merits of analog and digital fax boards, and guidelines and recommendations for ordering various telephony services (e.g., T1, DID) for use with your networked fax solution.

Dialogic Diva Server fax boards

VSI-FAX supports Dialogic Diva Server analog and digital fax boards (formerly Eicon fax boards) on Windows and Linux platforms.

Refer to *Dialogic Diva Server fax boards and drivers* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation for the list of Windows and Linux systems the Diva Server boards have been tested on, and for more information about using Dialogic Diva Server boards with VSI-FAX.

You must install the physical fax board in the machine following the manufacturer recommendations before installing VSI-FAX. For this, refer to the manual shipped with the board. You can also visit the Dialogic web site at http://www.dialogic.com, and consult documentation on these fax boards at http://www.dialogic.com/support/helpweb/divasvr/default.htm.

Once the boards is installed, install the drivers as described in *Dialogic Diva Server fax boards and drivers* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation.

Ethernet terminal servers

While some Esker customers have had success using Ethernet terminal servers, Esker does not recommend this practice nor do we support it in any way. Fax modems should always be connected to local serial ports. If you want to use more modems than can be connected to open serial ports on your system, use a local serial port expander.

Installing VSI-FAX Server on Windows

Installing VSI-FAX Server on Windows

Installing fax board drivers

First you should install and configure your board in the VSI-FAX computer.

For information about installing VSI-FAX with a Dialogic® Brooktrout fax board or with Brooktrout SR140™ Fax Software solution, refer to *Installing Brooktrout drivers on Windows* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation.

For information about installing VSI-FAX with a Dialogic® Diva Server fax board, refer to *Dialogic Diva Server fax board and drivers* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation.

Installing VSI-FAX Server on Windows

This section describes how to install a VSI-FAX server on a supported Windows platform. For a list of supported platforms, see Supported Platforms and Equipment (page 11).

If you are installing VSI-FAX in a Terminal Services environment, make sure you refer to Considerations in the Terminal Services environment before you start.

VSI-FAX Server setup installs a print driver on the computer. When installing VSI-FAX on a server with very restrictive security rules, make sure that the installation of a new print driver is allowed.

Tip

Use your completed Fax Server Information Form (page 237) to provide the required information for this installation.

1. Load your VSI-FAX CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive.

   If the installation program does not start automatically, run `autorun.exe` located in the root directory of your VSI-FAX CD-ROM.

   The VSI-FAX CD browser appears.
2. Choose VSI-FAX Server. The VSI-FAX Server Welcome screen appears.
3. Click Next to proceed with the installation. The Software License Agreement appears.
4. Click Yes to agree to the conditions in the license agreement and Next to continue with VSI-FAX server installation.
5. If you agree with the Destination Location, click Next. Otherwise, click Browse to select a different location. Click Next to proceed with the installation.

   Tip

   The installation program suggests a default destination directory for the VSI-FAX server program files. To install the VSI-FAX server in another directory, click Browse and follow the on-screen instructions.
6. In the VSI-FAX Software License screen that appears after the file copy, enter the Serial Number and Activation Key you received when you registered your software or when you asked for an upgrade and click Next to proceed with the installation.

   To know how to get your Serial Number and Activation Key, refer to Prepare.

To install an imaging server, enter the license provided in Imaging Server Setup and Configuration (page 137).

Note

If you do not enter a Serial Number and Activation Key, an evaluation license will be installed. This license allows you to test VSI-FAX and see if the product matches your needs. With such a license, you can use VSI-FAX for 30 days. After that, you can reactivate it with another time-limited evaluation license or with a production license.

7. Enter the Cover Page Information and click Next. This information will appear on a typical cover page.

   Users can change this information when they send a fax, or they can create other cover pages that show different information. In most cases however, this will be the information you want most of your fax recipients to see.

   Note

   You may want to dedicate a separate email account on your company mail server for fax administration.

8. In the Telephony Information screen, enter your Country code, Area code, Local number length, Long distance access number, Dial prefix, and Dial suffix. Enter your Called Subscriber ID (CSI) and Transmitting Station ID (TSI) strings and click Next to accept your dialing properties and proceed with the installation.

   For information on the fields to fill in, refer to Dialing properties.

9. In the SMTP/POP3 Information screen, enter your SMTP server name, SMTP from-name, POP3 server name, POP3 user name, POP3 password, and confirm password. Click Next to continue.

   For information on the fields to fill in, refer to Internet email servers.

   Note

   You only need to create the POP3 user account if the Email-to-Fax gateway integration will be used.

   Important

   When setting up your POP3 fax routing email account, do not use an email account that receives normal email. The fax server will try to process all received email on this account as an inbound fax, causing drastically poor fax routing performance or unexpected application behavior. Furthermore, the fax server will remove email messages from this inbox. Therefore, Esker strongly suggests setting up an email user like `autofax` for your POP3 fax routing, as well as to ensure that this email user is left off distribution lists at your company.

10. The Add fax modem devices to server screen appears. This screen allows you to add fax modems to the server. Enter the information for the modem(s) you have installed, if any. Enter a name and a description for the device queue, and the serial port to use with the modem. Ensure that no other modem is using the same port. Click Add Device to add a fax modem and Next to proceed with the installation. If you do not have a modem installed, leave this screen blank and click Next.

    Notes

    If you have a fax board, its setup is addressed later in the installation process.

    If you are testing VSI-FAX with the loopback device or you are only planning to route faxes to email addresses, you can skip this dialog box.

    You can skip this part of the installation and add your fax modem devices later using the `vfxadmin` command or the VSI-FAX Server Administration snap-in.

11. When asked if you wish to install/update the Brooktrout TR1034, TruFax or SR140 drivers now, click either Yes or No depending on the fax solution you are to use. If you click Yes, the driver package will be installed before proceeding with the VSI-FAX Server installation.

    - To use a Booktrout TR1034 or TruFax board with VSI-FAX, you need to install/update the fax hardware **before** installing the drivers support from the main setup. If you have already installed/updated to the Brooktrout Plug and Play driver, click Yes to continue. Otherwise, click No to cancel the installation, refer to *Installing the Brooktrout Plug and Play Driver for TR1034, TruFax boards* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation to install the new plug and play driver, and relaunch the server installation.
    - To use the SR140 Fax Software, you do not need to install or update any hardware. Click Yes to continue.

- If you want to install VSI-FAX Server with the loopback and install the drivers later, click No.

For information about installing VSI-FAX Server with Dialogic Brooktrout drivers, refer to *Dialogic Brooktrout fax boards and drivers* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation.

12. You may be warned that the last version of the Dialogic Brooktrout Plug-and-play-driver 6.0.0 is required to use VSI-FAX with a Brooktrout fax board.

    - To use a Brooktrout TR1034 or TruFax board with VSI-FAX, you need to install/update the fax hardware before running the server installation. Click No to cancel the VSI-FAX server installation, follow the steps in *Installing the Brooktrout Plug and Play Driver for TR1034, TruFax boards* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation and relaunch the server installation.
    - To use the SR140 Fax Software, you do not need to install or update any hardware. Click Yes to continue the installation.

    For information about installing VSI-FAX Server with Dialogic Brooktrout drivers, refer to *Dialogic Brooktrout fax boards and drivers* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation.

13. If you have installed a Diva Server board, the installation program automatically detects this board. When asked if you wish to configure your board, click Yes.

    For information about installing Diva Server fax board drivers, refer to *Dialogic Diva Server fax board and drivers* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation.

14. When asked if you want to start VSI-FAX server now, click Yes.

    Tip

    We strongly suggest that you start the VSI-FAX service at this point. Otherwise, you will need to manually start the fax scheduler before you can test the fax server.

    If you change the VSI-FAX services to be manual or run as a user, you will have to reset those changes after an update install since they will be set to automatic.

15. Click Finish to complete the installation.

16. Logout, then log back in to the server. VSI-FAX modifies the path to point to the `bin` folder and sets up an environment variable. These changes do not take effect until you logout and then login to the server.

Preparing fax imaging via application printing

To generate the Tiff fax images, VSI-FAX server uses application printing: the requested documented is requested to be opened with the default program and printed on the VSI-FAX printer from this application. Often, these application (such as Microsoft Office ones, or Adobe Acrobat Reader) will require some additional information to be provided the first time they are launched after being installed (like providing registration information), and these dialogs will block the printing process. Therefore, **we strongly recommend that you manually launch these application at least once** after they have been installed to make sure they open without popping any mandatory dialogs.

Microsoft Office Word 2007 component

In addition to running the application at least once, the Microsoft Office Word 2007 Visual Basic for applications component must be installed for Microsoft Word documents to be properly opened and printed.

Considerations in the Terminal Services environment

Usually, installing software accessed by multiple users in a terminal server environment requires that you are in Install mode on the server before setup is launched. However you don't need to do so to install VSI-FAX as the setup program will automatically detect that your are running a terminal server and will therefore switch to Install mode without any other action required.

Installing VSI-FAX Server on Unix/Linux

Installing VSI-FAX Server on Unix/Linux

This section describes how to install a VSI-FAX server on a supported Unix or Linux platform.

See also
See Supported Platforms and Equipment (page 11) for more information about supported Unix or Linux platforms.

Tip
Use your completed Fax Server Information Form (page 237) to provide the information required during this installation.

Installing fax drivers

With Diva Server fax boards, you should first install and configure your board before installing VSI-FAX Server. For more information, refer to *Installing Diva Server fax boards drivers* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation.

With Brooktrout TR1034-TruFax boards, you should install VSI-FAX Server first then install the Brooktrout drivers and configure your board. For details, refer to *Installing Brooktrout drivers package and configuring your board on Unix/Linux* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation.

To use the Brooktrout SR140 fax software, you should install VSI-FAX Server first then install the Brooktrout drivers, obtain an SR140 Fax Software license, activate this license and configure SR140. For details, refer to *Installing Brooktrout drivers package and configuring SR140 on Unix/Linux* in the Fax Boards and Fax Drivers Installation documentation.

Installing VSI-FAX Server

VSI-FAX is supplied on CD-ROM media. Follow the explanations in Installing VSI-FAX with the CD-ROM to perform the installation using the CD-ROM.

You may need to install a VSI-FAX version using a downloaded file. For this, refer to Installing VSI-FAX using a downloaded file.

Note
When installing on Red Hat 4/5, you need to have the libstdc++.so.5 installed. Refer to Installing libstdc++.so.5 on Red Hat Enterprise 4/5 for details.

Installing VSI-FAX with the CD-ROM

Because VSI-FAX is supplied on CD-ROM media, you must either know the Unix or Linux mount command required to mount the CD-ROM drive or know how to use Windows Explorer to gain access to the files on the CD-ROM.

1. Log in as root.
2. Open a terminal window if you are running X Windows.
3. Load your VSI-FAX product CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive.

4. Mount the CD-ROM drive.

   Refer to Sample Unix and Linux Mount Commands (page 235) for additional information.
5. Change directory to the CD-ROM mount point by entering:
   `cd /mnt/cdrom`
6. Run the installation program by entering:
   `./install.sh`
7. Confirm your platform.
8. The list of available packages appears:
   `Available packages are:`

   ```
   s) Fax Server
   v) Virtual Fax Server
   a) Fax Client APIs
   b) Dialogic Brooktrout TR1034-SR140 drivers
   *) All packages
   Q) quit
   Enter package to install [s]:
   ```

   Choose Fax Server (s) as the package to install.
9. Choose where you want to extract the temporary install files (The default location is `/tmp`).
10. Choose where you want to install the VSI-FAX system. (The default location is `/usr/vsifax`).
11. Let the setup create a group "vsifax".
12. Let the setup create a user "vsifax".
13. Agree to the conditions in the Software License Agreement.
14. When asked for License information, enter the Serial Number and Activation Key you received when you registered your software or when you asked for an upgrade.

    To know how to get your Serial Number and Activation Key, refer to Prepare.

    Note

    If you do not enter a Serial Number and Activation Key, an evaluation license will be installed. This license allows you to test VSI-FAX and see if the product matches your needs. With such a license, you can use VSI-FAX for 30 days. After that, you can renew it with another time-limited evaluation license or with a production license.

    The setup installs VSI-FAX Server.
15. Enter the information for the modem(s) you want to configure, if any.

    Notes

    If you are testing VSI-FAX with the loopback device or you are only planning to route faxes to email addresses, you can skip this dialog box.

    You can skip this part of the installation and add your fax modem devices later using the `vfxadmin` command.
16. Enter your TSI and CSI strings.

    Refer to Dialing properties .
17. Enter your SMTP server name.
18. Indicate if you reside in the United States or Canada.
19. Enter your country code, long distance access number, area code, local number length, dial prefix, and dial suffix.

    Refer to Dialing properties.
20. Enter your POP3 server name, POP3 user name, POP3 password, and confirm password.

    Note

    You need to create the POP3 user account only if the Email-to-Fax gateway integration will be used.

Refer to Internet email servers.

Important

When setting up your POP3 fax routing email account, do not use an email account that receives normal email. The fax server will try to process all received email on this account as an inbound fax, causing drastically poor fax routing performance or unexpected application behavior. Furthermore, the fax server will remove email messages from this inbox. Therefore, Esker strongly suggests setting up an email user like autofax for your POP3 fax routing as well as to ensure that this email user is left off distribution lists at your company.

21. Enter the cover page information. This information will appear on a typical cover page. Users can change this information when they send a fax, or they can create other cover pages that show different information. In most cases however, this will be the information you want most of your fax recipients to see.
22. Set automatic start at system boot for VSI-FAX Admin Server and Fax Server.
23. Start Admin Server and Fax Server now to be able to test the fax server after installation.
24. The installation is complete. Thank you for using VSI-FAX.

Installing VSI-FAX using a downloaded file

To extract and install using the server.tgz file, follow the instructions below.

1. Create a temporary directory.
2. Copy the server.tgz file into the temporary directory.
3. Uncompress/unzip the file. If you have gunzip, then execute the following command:

   ```
   gunzip server.tgz
   ```

   If you don't have gunzip on your system, move the server.tgz file to server.tar.Z with the following command:

   ```
   mv server.tgz server.tar.Z
   ```

   and then uncompress the file with the following command:

   ```
   uncompress server.tar.Z
   ```
4. Extract the contents of the tar file with the following command:

   ```
   tar xvf server.tar
   ```
5. Run the installation program with the following command:

   ```
   ./install.sh
   ```
6. Select the Fax Server package.

The installation program will guide you through the remainder of the fax server installation. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Tip

The installation program will ask if you want to start the fax scheduler. We strongly suggest that you start the fax scheduler. Otherwise, you will need to manually start the fax scheduler before you can test the fax server.

Upgrading to version 6.1

You can upgrade to version 6.1 from the following versions:

- VSI-FAX 6.0

Direct upgrades to 6.1 from versions prior to 6.0 are not advised. Existing customers running a version of VSI-FAX prior to 6.0 **must upgrade to version 6.0** before installing version 6.1.

Prerequisites

Ensure that no application will try to access the server during the upgrade operation

If you were using a Brooktrout fax board with your former version of VSI-FAX, refer to the the Fax boards and fax drivers installation manual for information about fax board upgrade.

Upgrade steps on Windows platforms

1. Load the VSI-FAX CD-ROM.
2. Click VSI-FAX Server under Fax Server on the Autorun screen.
3. The installation program detects that the VSI-FAX server has previously been installed on the machine and proceeds with the upgrade. Existing cover page information, telephony information, SMTP server and POP3 server connection settings and fax modem devices configuration are kept. Click Next when the file copy is finished.
4. In the VSI-FAX Server License screen, enter your Serial Number and Activation Key or leave the screen empty to install the evaluation version. Click Next.
5. Click Finish to complete the server upgrade.
6. Then upgrade the other VSI-FAX components you were using by launching the corresponding setup from VSI-FAX Autorun:
    - Server Administration
    - LanFax Windows Client
    - CoverMaker
    - VSI-FAX SDK
    - Outlook Client
    - MailMerge Client
    - Virtual Server
    - Add-On Formatters

Server Upgrade steps on Unix/Linux platforms

1. Mount the CD-ROM drive.
2. Change directory to the CD-ROM mount point by entering:cd /mnt/cdrom
3. Run the installation program by entering: ./install.sh
4. Confirm platform type.
5. The list of available packages appears. Enter "s" to install the Fax Server package.
6. Follow the on-screen instructions. Answer yes when prompted to stop the existing VSI-FAX server.

7. Enter your Serial Number, Activation Key and remote server addresses if requested.
8. After the file copy, modify existing fax modem devices configuration, cover page information, telephony information, SMTP server and POP3 server connection settings if needed.
9. Answer yes when prompted to start the VSI-FAX Admin Server and Fax Server tasks.

Breaking changes

VSI-FAX MailMerge Client

The printer port name has been renamed VSI-FAX Port 3.0 in VSI-FAX 6.1. The macro used in Microsoft Word to customize the mail merge mechanism uses the port name. Thus you should use the new macro version to send your faxes with the MailMerge Client.

If you customized the Microsoft Word document or template provided with a previous version of VSI-FAX, you should update the macro contained in your document. To do this, you must:

1. Edit your document in Microsoft Word.
2. Enter ALT + F8 to open the Macro dialog.
3. Click the Organizer button.
4. Delete the previous `mergebox` macro.
5. Use the Close File/Open File button on the right to open the template file provided with VSI-FAX 6.1.
6. Copy the new `mergebox` macro in your document.

Testing the Fax Server

Testing the Fax Server

Immediately after installing the fax server, verify proper fax server operation by sending a simple test fax via the `vfx` command line. You can send this test fax using the loopback feature or you can send it to any fax machine.

Sending a test fax using the loopback

Sending a test fax using the loopback feature eliminates potential outside problems (e.g., phone lines, modems, etc) that could cause a fax transmission failure.

You need a small text file to use as a test fax. Any text file will do.

1. **Important** : If you have not already **logged out and logged back** in to the server since you've installed VSI-FAX, then do so now.
2. Open a command shell on your computer.
3. Verify that the fax server is running by entering:

   ```
   vfxstat -s 2
   ```

   Server status information is displayed. The display will be continually refreshed every two seconds.
4. Open another command shell on your computer.
5. Send your test fax by entering:

   ```
   vfx -n <fax_number> -d lb <my_file.txt>
   ```

   For example, to fax a test file called `MyFile.txt` to (800) 123-4567 using the loopback feature, you would enter:

   ```
   vfx -n 8001234567 -d lb MyFile.txt
   ```

   The test fax is sent to the loopback device queue, and the fax job number appears.
6. Switch to the command shell showing the fax server status.

You can track the status of your test fax as the display is continually updated.

1. After your test fax is successfully sent, it is routed to your received fax inbox. You can open and view this file with the multi-page TIFF viewer on your computer to verify that the fax was sent correctly.
2. Run the `vfxilog` command. The first entry listed will show the request ID of the last fax that was received. Write down this request ID. The fax will be stored in the fax queue for the user named in the clientid column.
3. Launch your multi-page TIFF viewer.
4. Open the `<request_ID>.tif` file located in the fax server `faxq/<user>` directory, where `<request_ID>` corresponds to the test fax request ID you wrote down.

Your test fax is displayed in your multi-page TIFF viewer.

Sending a test fax to a fax machine

For the fax to work, you need a valid fax number for a fax machine in your area. You also need a small text file to use as a test fax. Any text file will do.

1. Open a command shell on your computer.

2. Verify that the fax server is running by entering:

   ```
   >vfxstat -s 2
   ```

   Server status information is displayed. The display will be continually refreshed every two seconds.
3. Open another command shell on your computer.
4. Send your test fax by entering:

   ```
   vfx -n <fax_number> <my_file.txt>
   ```

   For example, to fax a test file called `<my_file.txt>` to (800) 123-4567, you would enter:

   ```
   vfx -n 8001234567 <my_file.txt>
   ```

   The test fax is sent to the default device queue.
5. Switch to the status command shell.

You can track the status of your test fax as the display is continually updated.

Your test fax should be received by your fax machine.

Installing VSI-FAX Server Administration MMC snap-in

Installing VSI-FAX Server Administration MMC snap-in

Important
Refer to the VSI-FAX Server Administration help for additional information about loading the snap-in from a Microsoft Management Console (MMC) session.
If you do not install VSI-FAX Server Administration on the VSI-FAX Server computer, ensure that the VSI-FAX server that you want to remotely administer is accessible via a network connection and that port 2539 is opened through any firewalls.

1. Load your VSI-FAX CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive.

   If the autorun does not start automatically, run `autorun.exe` located in the root directory of your VSI-FAX CD-ROM.

   The VSI-FAX CD browser appears.
2. Select Server Administration under Tools.
3. The Welcome screen appears. Click Next to proceed with the installation.
4. Click Next if you agree with the default destination directory for the VSI-FAX Server Administration program files. To install the VSI-FAX Server Administration files in another directory, click Browse and follow the on-screen instructions.

   The program files are copied to the local hard drive. This may take several seconds.
5. When the Setup complete screen appears, click Finish.

Launching VSI-FAX Server Administration console

Before you can administer VSI-FAX using this snap-in, configure the connection to the Fax Server:

1. Select Start > Programs > VSI-FAX > VSI-FAX Server Administration to launch the VSI-FAX Server Administration console.
2. When prompted, enter the hostname of the VSI-FAX server in the Fax Server field, or click Browse to select an existing Fax Server.
3. Enter vsifax in the User ID field.
4. If you have not added a password for the vsifax user within the VSI-FAX database, **do not enter a password** in the Password field. Otherwise, enter the password that you assigned to the vsifax user.
5. Click OK to. You can now administer VSI-FAX.

To administer another server from this snap-in or change the connection settings, right-click the VSI-FAX Server Administration icon, and select New > Fax Server. Enter the connection settings as above and click OK to save the new Fax Server icon.

Installing the Outlook Client

Installing the Outlook Client

Refer to the Supported Platforms and Equipment (page 11) before installing the Outlook Client.

Important
You **must** use an administrator account when installing the Outlook Client on Windows Vista.

See also
Refer to the VSI-FAX Outlook Client help for information about configuring Outlook for Corporate or Workgroup mode.

Notes
The reason the Outlook Client will not work with Outlook in Internet only mode is that our fax technology requires the full MAPI DLLs, which are only installed when you configure Outlook for Corporate or Workgroup mode.

For best results and performances, it is recommended that you have an up-to-date version of Microsoft Office, with he latest available service pack installed.

The preferred way to use the Outlook Client is to use Outlook with a Microsoft Exchange Server. Although this is the preferred configuration, the Exchange Server is not required. However, if you run Outlook without an Exchange Server, you will not have access to the custom fax form.

Large-scale deployment

For the most effective large-scale client deployment:

- Publish the fax message form **once** to the Organizational Forms Library on your Exchange server. Do this by running the VSI-FAX Outlook Client setup on a machine with which you have administrative and Exchange publication privileges. Subsequent client installations should just answer "No" to the dialog prompting for re-publishing the fax message form.
- Turn on the remote registration option on the fax server.
- Set up the master default profile on the fax server with reasonable defaults for your organization.

What you need to know before installing Outlook Client

Outlook needs to be closed prior to launching the Outlook client setup.

During the installation, you will have to choose the VSI-FAX form publication location:

- On the Exchange server: Organizational Forms Library (your Outlook user then needs to have the appropriate publication rights)
- Locally: Personal Forms Library. This option cannot be chosen in a Terminal Service Environment as only the user doing the installation would have the form available
- No publication. Used when you don't want to use the fax form but rather a regular Mail message form. Also used when you are not in an Exchange environment.

At the end of the setup, you will need to enter the VSI-FAX server name or IP address as well as the user ID used when connecting to the VSI-FAX server and sending a fax.

After the installation, when launching Outlook, you will have three new buttons: Fax message, Fax Status and Fax Profile settings.

Basic installation procedure

1. Load your VSI-FAX CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive.

   If the autorun program does not start automatically, run `autorun.exe` located in the root directory of your VSI-FAX CD-ROM.

   The VSI-FAX CD browser appears.
2. Select `Outlook Client under Desktop Client`.

   If an existing version of the VSI-FAX Outlook Client is detected, you will be advised that this older version must be removed before you can proceed with the installation. Click Yes to remove the old VSI-FAX Outlook Client and proceed with the installation.
3. The Welcome screen appears. Click Next to proceed with the installation.
4. If Microsoft Outlook is currently running on the machine, you will be advised that this client must be closed. Close Microsoft Outlook and click Retry on the Microsoft Outlook Running advertisement dialog box.
5. Click Next if you agree with the default destination directory for the VSI-FAX Outlook Client program files. To install the VSI-FAX Outlook Client files in another directory, click Browse and follow the on-screen instructions.

   The program files are copied to the your local hard drive. This takes several seconds.
6. Enter the hostname or IP address of your fax server. Enter your VSI-FAX user account login name (client ID).
7. Click Next to proceed with the installation.
8. Select your form publishing option (personal forms library, organizational forms library, or none).

   Note

   If you want to use the custom fax form provided with the VSI-FAX Outlook Client, you must decide where you want to publish it. You can either publish to the organizational forms library or your personal forms library.
9. Click Next to proceed with the installation.
10. When the Setup Complete screen appears, click Finish.

Post-installation notes

- You can use the Outlook Client to send faxes directly from Outlook or from another Windows application. Refer to the VSI-FAX Outlook Client help for additional information.
- If you are unable to send faxes after installing VSI-FAX Outlook Client in Windows Server 2003, reboot the server. This will ensure that installed DLLs get registered.
- If you are using the Outlook Client on a system that has other fax products installed, you must control the order that Microsoft polls the services. To make VSI-FAX the preferred fax product, choose Tools > Services > Delivery and move the VSI-FAX Outlook Client service closer to the top of the list than any other fax service.

Phone book conversion notes

- A conversion utility (PbConvert.exe) that converts phone book and user profile information is part of the Outlook Client install and is called at the end of the installation. It can also be run separately by users who want to run the conversion manually.
- Command line parameters are available for all of the configuration options the program supports. Invoking the PbConvert.exe /help displays help for this utility.
- During the conversion process, City, State and Zip information is lost. This is primarily because our directory format uses Address 1/Address 2/Address 3 fields rather than City/State/Zip Code to store this information.

Windows Terminal Server installation notes

This section provides critical information for successfully installing the VSI Outlook Client in a Windows Terminal Server environment.

The Outlook Client supports Microsoft Windows Terminal Services. Make sure you have deployed Outlook in a Windows Terminal Services Environment before deploying the Outlook Client.

Requirements

To successfully install the Outlook Client in a Terminal Services environment, you must:

- Log in and run the installation program directly from the Terminal Services machine with local Administrator privileges.
- Ensure that each Terminal Services user has a unique path name defined for the Terminal Services Home Directory.
- Launch the fax client installation program in Install Mode see below).
- Have Installed Outlook in Corporate or Workgroup configuration.
- Ensure that no Terminal Services clients are running Outlook.

If your Outlook users connect to an Exchange Server, add the Exchange service to the default mail profile for the Administrator account and each Terminal Services client user. If your Outlook users connect to an Exchange server using Outlook 2000 and you want to use the custom Fax Message Form, the Terminal Services Administrator must be granted publishing rights to the Exchange server Organizational Forms Library specified in the default mail profile.

General application notes

To successfully install the Outlook Client in a Windows Terminal Server environment, please note the following:

- When installing the Outlook Client in a Terminal Server environment, the Fax Message Form can only be published in the Organizational Forms Library of your Exchange server (or not at all).
- Ensure that you have the appropriate publication rights before you install.
- The Outlook Client setup program installs the client in "Install Mode" when launched in a Terminal Server environment. When you are ready to proceed with the installation, click "Install" on the setup information message box. Otherwise click "Cancel" .
- Terminal Server client users must not run or launch Outlook during the install or uninstall procedures.
- If you are using Microsoft Outlook in a Terminal Services environment, and if Outlook was installed after the Terminal Services support, the Visual Basic Script support is not installed in Outlook and you cannot use VBScript in custom Outlook forms. This means that you will not be able to send faxes from Outlook correctly with the VSI-FAX form: the device used is always the one set by default on the VSI-FAX server, you cannot modify the cover page settings, etc. Refer to the Microsoft Support article http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb;en-us;302003 for more information on how to install these components.
- Multiple mail profiles are not supported in a Terminal Server environment with the Outlook Client.
- The installation program will only add the Outlook Client service to the default mail profile for each user.
- Once the software is installed, have all of your Terminal Server client users restart their sessions before attempting to use the Outlook Client.

Important caching information

In the Windows Terminal Server environment, it is possible that some users will not see the Outlook Client exchange extension the first time they log into the Terminal Server following product installation. This is because Outlook maintains a cache of the registered Exchange extensions and may use that cache instead of checking if any new extensions have been registered.

There are three ways to remedy this, described in the following sections:

- Delete all Outlook cache files

- Force Outlook to regenerate each cache file
- Create a registry key

Delete all Outlook cache files

This method is faster (especially if there are many Terminal Server users) but should only be attempted by experienced system administrators.

1. Ensure that Outlook is not running in any Terminal Server session.
2. Search for and delete all instances of `extend.dat` file (extension cache) on the Windows Terminal Server machine.

   This file is typically found in each user's Outlook data directory: C:\Documents and Settings\%username%\Local Settings\Application Data\Microsoft\ folder.

   The next time Outlook is started, the `extend.dat` file will be regenerated.
3. Launch Outlook. You can verify that the `extend.dat` file is recreated. Verify that the fax buttons appear.

Force Outlook to regenerate each cache file

This method is safer than manually deleting the cache files. However, this method must be performed by each Terminal Server user.

1. Open Outlook.
2. Choose Tools > Options. The Options dialog box appears.
3. Click the Other tab.
4. Click Advanced Options. The Advanced Options dialog box appears.
5. Click Add-In Manager. The Add-In Manager dialog box appears.

   If the Outlook Client add-in does not appear in the list, proceed with the remainder of this procedure.
6. Change your current add-in configuration by setting or unsetting any item in the add-in list, and write this information down.
7. Close the Add-In Manager, Advanced Options and Options dialog boxes by successively clicking OK in each one.
8. Close and restart Outlook.
9. Perform Steps 2 through 5 again.

   Now the Outlook Client add-in should appear in the add-in list.
10. Undo the change you made in Step 6 (i.e., restore it to the original setting).
11. Close the Add-In Manager, Advanced Options, and Options dialog boxes by clicking OK in each one.

Create a registry key

You can create a registry key. Under:

```
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Exchange\CLient\Extensions]
```

Create a new string value named:

Outlook Setup Extension

Enter the value:

```
4.0;Outxxx.dll;7;000000000000000;0000000000;OutXXX
```

If the problem occurs for other users, verify that the key has not been deleted when Outlook has been launched.

Troubleshooting problems with the Outlook Client

Troubleshooting procedures

When there is a problem with the Outlook Client, you can check the following components:

- Mapi account
- State of the VSI-FAX server
- Forms
- Outlook extension

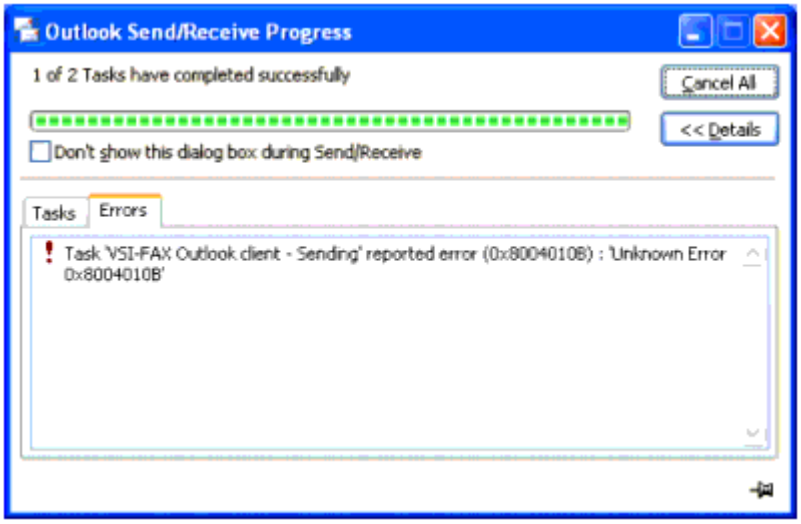
Mapi account

In Outlook, under Tools > Email Accounts > View or change e-mail accounts, verify that the VSI-FAX MAPI account has been created.

Open its properties and verify that the proper parameters are set.

State of the VSI-FAX server

If the VSI-FAX server is down or not responding, you will get an unclear error message from Outlook:

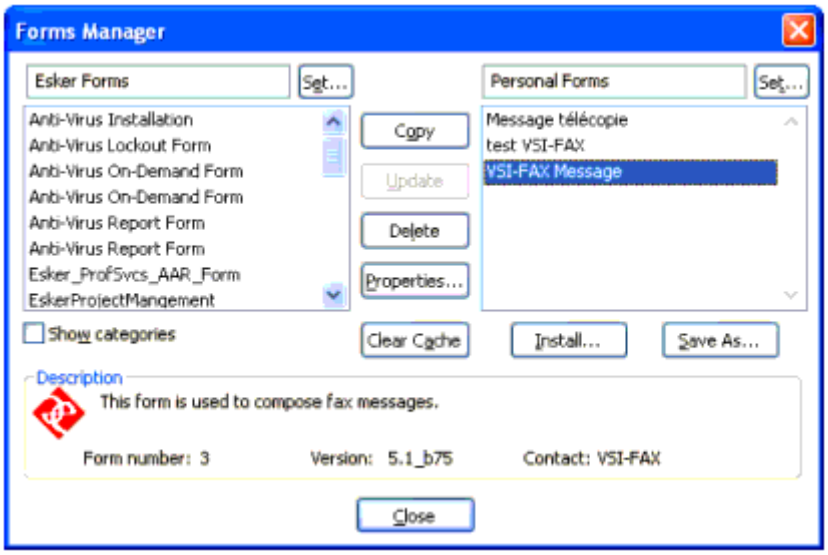


In this case, restart the scheduler on the VSI-FAX server and make sure that the scheduler stays up.

Forms

If you have a problem opening forms, you can verify that the form was installed in the appropriate location:

In Outlook, select Tools > Options > Other > Advanced > Custom Forms > Manage forms.



If the form was published in the organizational form, you can try copying it locally in the personal forms folder to verify that there is no problem accessing the form on the exchange server.

Outlook extension

VSI-FAX is an Outlook extension. If the fax buttons do not appear, you can verify that the extensions is correctly installed by checking the following registry key:

`HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Exchange\Client\Extensions`

The VSI-FAX Outlook client extension should appear.

In some case, the extensions are cached by Outlook and are not loaded. Refer to Important caching information to learn how you can clear the Outlook cache.

Traces activation

You can activate some tracing with the following procedure:

1. Open the registry.
2. Set HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\VSI-FAX\Outlook client\debugLevel to 255 (255 in decimal = ff in hexadecimal).
3. Install the debugview tool that can be found on the sysinternals.com web site.
4. Launch this tool and you can capture traces when using the client and even when installing or reinstalling it (the key needs to be set manually before the installation).

Known issues & Tricks

Fax address format

In some cases, the usual [fax:<faxnb>] format will not work because there is already another Fax Integration in Outlook from other software (or from Esker Deliveryware for instance). The fax is then sent by this other integration.

In this case, you can use the undocumented [vfn: <faxnb>] format to send faxes from Outlook.

Cover page issue

When sending from the Outlook client, the status window is completely grayed out and the fax is not sent.

This problem occurs because a setting of the fax is incorrect. You can activate the traces to have further information.

Outlook Signature

In Outlook, you can define a signature that will be put on all new messages. Depending on which email account is set as default (the mail exchange account or the VSI-FAX MAPI account), you will get this signature when opening a New fax message.

Installing CoverMaker

Note

You must have write access to the vsicover directory to be able to save your cover pages. Without correct rights, you can have the "permission denied" or "no such file or directory" errors.

Install CoverMaker to design custom fax cover pages.

1. Load your VSI-FAX CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive.

   If the autorun does not start automatically, run `autorun.exe` located in the root directory of your VSI-FAX CD-ROM.
2. Select CoverMaker under Tools.
3. The Welcome screen appears. Click Next to proceed with the installation.
4. If a former version of VSI-FAX CoverMaker is installed on your machine, answer Yes when prompted to search for a previous installation of CoverMaker if you want to keep existing covers. If this is a fresh installation of CoverMaker, click No not to search for a previous installation.
5. Click Next if you agree with the destination directory for the CoverMaker program files. To install CoverMaker in another directory, click Browse and follow the on-screen instructions.
6. Enter the hostname or IP address of your fax server. Enter your VSI-FAX user account login name (client ID).
7. Click Next to proceed with the installation.

   The program files are copied to the your local hard drive. This takes several seconds.
8. When the Setup Complete screen appears, click Finish.

Installing the Software Development Kit

Installing the Software Development Kit

Note
You will find the C/C++ Client API Reference guide (c_api.pdf) in the \docs folder of VSI-FAX CD-ROM.

Installing on Unix or Linux

1. On the VSI-FAX CD, select `server\<platform>\faxapi.tgz`, where <platform> is the appropriate platform for your system.

   See below for information on how to work with .tgz files.
2. Follow the on-screen installation instructions to complete installation.

Extracting .tgz files (Unix only)

To extract and install using the `faxapi.tgz` file, follow these instructions:

1. Create a temporary directory.
2. Copy the `faxapi.tgz` file into the temporary directory.
3. Uncompress/unzip the file. If you have gunzip, then execute the following command:

   ```
   gunzip faxapi.tgz
   ```

   If you don't have gunzip on your system move the `server.tgz` file to `server.tar.Z` with the following command:

   ```
   mv faxapi.tgz faxapi.tar.Z
   ```

   and then uncompress the file with the following command:

   ```
   uncompress faxapi.tar.Z
   ```
4. Extract the contents of the tar file with the following command:

   ```
   tar xvf faxapi.tar
   ```
5. Run the installation program with the following command:

   ```
   ./install.sh
   ```

Installing on Windows

1. Load the VSI-FAX CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive.

   If the installation program does not start automatically, run `autorun.exe` located in the root directory of your VSI-FAX CD-ROM.

   The VSI-FAX CD browser appears.
2. Select VSI-FAX SDK under Tools.
3. The Welcome screen appears. Click Next to proceed with the installation.

4. The Software License Agreement appears. Click Yes to agree to the conditions in the license agreement and continue with SDK installation.
5. Click Next if you agree with the default destination directory for the SDK program files. Otherwise, click Browse and follow the on-screen instructions to install the SDK in another directory.
6. The Choose VSI-FAX SDK Components screen appears. Select the components to install (Com client API, C/C++ client API, XML-F client API, and Java client API are selected by default).
7. Click Next to proceed with the installation. The program files are copied to the local hard drive. This may take several seconds.
8. When the Setup complete screen appears, click Finish.

Fax on Demand Connector

Fax on Demand Connector

The Fax on Demand Connector is the link between VSI-FAX and the Esker multi-channel e-document delivery solution, a.k.a. Esker on Demand. This connection allows VSI-FAX to automatically fax business documents directly from your company and desktop applications through outsourced fax service providers.

The Fax on Demand Connector for VSI-FAX is easy to implement and easy to use. It requires no custom programming, no disruption of existing business processes, and no changes to existing file formats. Once the Fax on Demand Connector is configured and enabled, a job can be submitted to the Esker on Demand server from VSI-FAX.

Two Fax on Demand devices are installed by default (FoDC and FoDC2). The first one points to the USA Esker on Demand server while the second one point to the European Esker on Demand server. Having two possible servers allows failover management, meaning that if a Fax on Demand destination is not available, then your faxes can be automatically processed by the other connector waiting for the primary location to be available again. Refer to Managing failover with the Fax on Demand Connector to learn more about his feature.

Important
You do not need to purchase any additional license to fax through Esker on Demand; the Fax on Demand Connector is included within all standard VSI-FAX licenses.

Configuration overview

There are two parts to setting up the Fax on Demand Connector in VSI-FAX:

1. Establishing an Esker on Demand account.
2. Configuring and enabling the Fax on Demand Connector.

Each part is covered in detail in this documentation.

Establishing an Esker on Demand account

To have access to the Esker on Demand server, you need to:

1. Obtain an Esker on Demand ID and password. For this, contact your Esker Account Manager and ask for an Esker on Demand account to be created for your company.
2. Know the name of the Esker on Demand server you'll be communicating with. This information is provided by Esker when your Esker on Demand account is opened.
3. Have an Internet connection between VSI-FAX at your site and the Esker on Demand server.

Configuring and enabling the Fax on Demand Connector

VSI-FAX Server installation program automatically installs the Fax on Demand Connector and creates a fax destination called FoDC and another one named FoDC2 for you. The FoDC2 destination is disabled by default.

This is the destination to use for sending fax jobs to the Esker on Demand server.

To be able to fax thru Esker on Demand, you simply need to enter the following Esker on Demand connection information in the server configuration file and enable the Fax on Demand Connector (it is disabled by default after setup):

- **Hostname** : The hostname or IP address of the Esker on Demand server you received from your Esker Account Manager. Set it to your main location for the main FoDC device (FoDC) and to the other location for the failover device (FoDC2), according to:
  - **USA** server: na.ondemand.esker.com
  - **European** server: as1.ondemand.esker.com
- **Account ID** : The Esker on Demand ID you received from your Esker Account Manager. Set the same value for both devices.
- **Password** : The Esker on Demand password you received from your Esker Account Manager. Set the same value for both devices.

This can be done from VSI-FAX Server Administration or from a command shell.

Command line

Log on to the VSI-FAX Server with the vsifax user, open a command prompt on your computer and enter the following:

```
vfxadmin config -a -i FODC DEVICE hostname na.ondemand.esker.com
vfxadmin config -a -i FODC DEVICE accountid myaccount222
vfxadmin config -a -e -i FODC DEVICE password mypasswordxxx

vfxadmin config -a -i FODC2 DEVICE hostname as1.ondemand.esker.com
vfxadmin config -a -i FODC2 DEVICE accountid myaccount222
vfxadmin config -a -e -i FODC2 DEVICE password mypasswordxxx
```

The example above sets the USA location as main device and the European location as failover device.

Once configured, you need to enable the main Fax on Demand Connector by entering the following (you can also start the VSI-FAX administration interface, if Fax on Demand failover is enabled, which is the default status for this feature, as it will automatically enable the main Fax on Demand device).

```
vfxadmin enable fodc
```

MMC

1. Open VSI-FAX Server Administration.
2. Connect to the appropriate VSI-FAX server with vsifax user.
3. Expand the tree view in the left pane and click on Devices. You should see the FoDC device (disabled) in the right pane.
4. Right-click on **FoDC** in the right pane, and select Properties:
   - On the General tab, check the hostname and change it if necessary (see above for available destinations).Enter your Esker on Demand account ID and password in the AccountID and Password fields respectively.
   - Check Enabled to enable the Fax on Demand Connector.
   - Click Apply to apply your modifications and OK to complete.
5. Right-click **FoDC2** in the right pane, and select Propertie s:
   - On the General tab, check the hostname and change it if necessary (see above for available destinations).
   - Enter your Esker on Demand account ID and password in the AccountID and Password fields respectively.
   - Leave the device as Disabled (do **not** check the Enabled otpion).
   - Click Apply to apply your modifications and OK to complete.

Configuring a proxy for the Fax on Demand Connector

If you need to use a proxy to connect to the Fax on Demand service, you need to configure VSI-FAX so that it can connect properly. To do so, you need to add keys in the **vsisrv.ini** file and reload VSI-FAX when done. These keys define the proxy name, its port, the username and the password used to access the proxy.

To add these keys, we advise that you use the vfxadmin command line four times as following:

```
vfxadmin config -a -i FODC DEVICE proxy-host myproxy.example.com
vfxadmin config -a -i FODC DEVICE proxy-user myproxyuser
vfxadmin config -a -e -i FODC DEVICE proxy-password myproxypassword
vfxadmin config -a -i FODC DEVICE proxy-port 8080
```

Important note
Notice the **-e** option used to specify the password. It enables encryption, which is required to store the password for the proxy.

For more information about the vfxadmin command, refer *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation.

Testing the Fax on Demand Connector

1. Create a simple text document called test.txt and at a command prompt issue the command:

   `vfx -n +<fax number> -d FoDC test.txt`

   where `<fax number>` is a fax number you have access to. The response should be the job number.

   Example:

   ```
   > C:\temp>vfx -n +<fax number> -d FoDC test.txt
   > 1005
   ```

2. At a command prompt you can now issue the command `vfxstat` to check the status of the job:

   Example (using the job number retrieved in the previous example):

   ```
   C:\temp>vfxstat 1013

   Status for VSI-FAX fax job: 1005
   Submitted by: joes E-mail : <none>
   Submit time : 10/14 14:17 Queue : FoDC
   Result : done Status : Normal
   To name : <none> From name : <none>
   To company : <none> From company: <none>
   To fax # : +8280024 From fax # : <none>
   To voice # : <none> From voice #: <none>
   Subject : <none>
   Num dialed : 8280024
   File 1 : 1 pg test.txt
   Total pgs : 1 pg
   Attempt Send-Time Result CSI
   ------- ----------- ------------------ ---------------
   1 10/14 14:18 Normal <none>
   ```

Changing your Fax on Demand Connector information

On occasion, you may need to change your Fax on Demand Connector Account ID, password, or hostname. This information is stored in your `vsisrv.ini` file. You can change the hostname and the Account ID from this file but not the password (which is encrypted in this file):

1. Use a text editor to edit the `VSIFAX\lib\vsisrv.ini` file. Find the `[DEVICE:FoDC]` section of the file. Edit the following fields as needed:

- `hostname` : The hostname or IP address of the Esker on Demand server, from your Esker Account Manager
- `accountID` : The Esker on Demand ID you received from your Esker Account Manager.
- `dial-convert` : When set `ON` , converts the dialstring according to the rules found in `dialcvt.lst`.

Note

The other fields in the section are advanced fields for Technical Support only. Save your changes and close the file.

2. Restart the VSI-FAX scheduler by typing the command `vfxsched restart`.
3. To change the password, you need to edit the general properties of the FoDC device in VSI-FAX Server Administration or open a command shell and issue the `vfxadmin config -a -e -i FODC DEVICE password mypasswordxxx` command.

Sending a fax using Fax on Demand

Once you have the Fax on Demand Connector configured and enabled, you can send faxes using Fax on Demand.

To send a fax using command lines: create and submit a job, and specify the destination/queue as FoDC, which was automatically created during the Fax on Demand Connector installation. For example:

```
vfx -n +6085551212 -d FoDC test.txt
```

You can also send faxes thru Fax on Demand from VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client. As a prerequisite, set FoDC as the default device either at the server's level or for the client only (open VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client application, select Tools > Options from the main window, open the Outgoing tab and set the Queue field to FoDC).

Then send your fax either by selecting Fax > New from the application toolbar or by printing the file on the VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client Printer from the source application.

Troubleshooting

How you should format destination fax numbers when submitting faxes via Esker on Demand depends on the telephone system of the country where the Fax on Demand server you are communicating with is located.
By default, the FoDC FIM communicates with a server located in the United States. If you are faxing from the United States, you should have no problem. Enter American local fax numbers to send faxes within the United States, and use international fax numbers to send faxes outside the United States.
If you are faxing from France, the Fax on Demand server whose hostname you have been provided with is located in France. You should enter French local fax numbers to send faxes within the France, and use international fax numbers to send faxes outside France.
In all cases, **we strongly recommend to you always use internationalized fax numbers** as it will guarantee that your fax is properly sent whatever the Fax on Demand device used.

Canceling a fax sent through Fax on Demand

You can cancel a fax job sent to the Esker on Demand server using the `vfxcancel` command. For more information on the `vfxcancel` command options, see *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation. You can also cancel outgoing faxes from VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client provided client-side archiving is enabled and you see outgoing faxes in the Outbox. Keep the following in mind when canceling jobs sent using the Fax on Demand Connector:

- You can cancel a fax job that has not been transferred to Esker on Demand yet, which means that it is still in the FoDC device's queue. However, performing a cancel action on a fax that has already been submitted to Esker on Demand (i.e. the fax is in the FoDC hold queue) may be too late depending on which step(s) the document has already been through on Esker's side. You are not guaranteed that your cancel action will be effectively taken into account.
- VSI-FAX receives updates on the status of faxes from the Esker on Demand server once every minute. Because of this, you may see a fax with the status of "queued" that has, in reality, already been sent. If you try to cancel a fax in this case, you will receive an error.

Receiving notifications about Fax on Demand fax jobs

Jobs sent from VSI-FAX to the Esker on Demand server are logged in the outbound fax log just as other VSI-FAX jobs are. To view the outbound fax log, type `vfxolog`. For more information on the `vfxolog` command options, see *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation.

Customizing the header in outgoing faxes

By default, the following type of header is added to any fax sent using Fax on Demand:

```
Date: <Date> | From: <CompanyName> | Page <CurPage> of <Pages>
```

- `<Date>` is filled with the date when the fax was composed.
- `<CompanyName>` is the company name you enter during server setup.
- `<CurPage>` is filled with the current page number in the fax transmission.
- `<Pages>` is filled with the total number of pages in the fax transmission.

The pipe character (|) is used to divide the header string into three parts on the fax page:

- The first part is left-justified on the fax page
- The middle-part is centered on the fax page
- The right part is right-justified on the fax page

You can customize this header by editing the `header` parameter's value in the `[DEVICE:FoDC]` section of the vsisrv.ini server configuration file:

```
[DEVICE:FoDC]
header=Date: <Date> | From: Esker | Page <CurPage> of <Pages>
```

In the header parameter's value, you can enter the syntax that suits your needs. For example, you can:

- Add constant text (e.g. change labels).
- Add variables among the List of supported variables for Fax on Demand faxes' headers below.

For example:

```
[DEVICE:FoDC]
header=Today's Date: <Date> | From <FromName> to <ToName> | <Pages>
```

For a completely blank page header, use a single space.

Limitation
If you use `<CurPage>` in your custom syntax, the resulting header will be the standard page header notwithstanding your custom syntax.

Note
Editing the `vsisrv.ini` file is the only way to customize the fax header of faxes sent using Fax on Demand. You cannot do it via `vfxadmin config` command or using VSI-FAX Server Administration.

List of supported variables for Fax on Demand faxes' headers

The two following sections provide you with reference information on the variables that you can use in the `header` parameter's value in `vsisrv.ini` file. Put the name inside angle brackets to designate it as a variable. For example, to specify the message subject, use `<Subject>`.

Variable	Description
Message values	

Variable	Description
Subject	Subject of the message
Date	Date when the message was composed
Message	Cover page message text
Page	Current page number in the message
Pages	Total number of pages in the message
CurDate	Current date
CurTime	Current time
CurPage	Current page number in this transmission
CurPages	Total number of pages in this transmission
Sender/Recipient values*	
Name	Name
Company	Company name
Dept	Department
Mail	Mailing address, including city and state
Country	Country
Postal	Postal or zip code
Voice	Voice telephone number
Fax	Fax telephone number
Email	Email address
Account	Account number
SUB	Sub-address
Station Id	Station ID

* These variables are used as either From.VariableName or To.VariableName, depending on whether you want to specify the sender or the recipient information. For example, to specify the recipient fax number, use <To.Fax>.

Troubleshooting Fax on Demand Connector network issues

The Fax on Demand Connector of your VSI-FAX server uses an Internet link to send faxes and instructions to the Esker on Demand servers. If the quality and/or speed of this link is not sufficient, network packets can be lost, causing request timeouts. If handled incorrectly, such request timeouts can lead to be "stuck" indefinitely in your FoDC queue.

Note
This section is intended for advanced VSI-FAX administrators.

To prevent this issue, VSI-FAX relies on three timeout management mechanisms:

1. First of all, the **fodcpgm** process, which manages the FoDC devices, will wait for a TCP timeout or an acknowledgment of receipt for 300 seconds after having sent the http request. This first delay is the standard timeout delay for all http requests.
2. After this delay, if this process is still waiting for a TCP timeout notification, the FIM management process will wait another 100 seconds before registering the FoDC job as failed. This 400 seconds delay is the execution timeout.
3. If the **fodcpgm** process is still running 700 seconds after the initial http request was sent, in spite of the above two timeout triggers, the VSI-FAX scheduler will kill and restart it. Once this process has been restarted, the VSI-FAX scheduler will try to send your fax once more. This final timeout mechanism is the maximum idle delay.

The above 300, 400 and 700 timeout delays should be suitable in most cases. However, if you are using a slow Internet connection and notice that the timeout delays are not long enough, you can choose to adjust these timeout delays.

Follow these steps if you wish to change the length of the above timeout delays:

1. Stop the VSIFAX server.
2. Use a text editor to edit the `VSIFAX\lib\vsisrv.ini` file:
   - Find the `[DEVICE:FoDC]` and `[DEVICE:FoDC-hold]` sections of the file and add or alter the following lines:

     ```
     request-timeout=<request timeout value>
     ```

     Where `<request timeout value>` is the value you wish to set for the standard timeout delay for all http requests (by default 300 seconds).

     ```
     exec-timeout=<exec timeout value>
     ```

     Where `<exec timeout value>` is the value you wish to set for the execution timeout (by default 400 seconds).
   - Find the `[VFXSCHED]` section of the file and add or alter the following line:

     ```
     MaxFimIdle=<Freeze timeout value>
     ```

     Where `<Freeze timeout value>` is the value you wish to set for the maximum idle delay (by default 700 seconds).
3. Restart the VSIFAX server to apply your modifications.

Fax on Demand Connector

The Fax on Demand Connector is the link between VSI-FAX and the Esker multi-channel e-document delivery solution, a.k.a. Esker on Demand. This connection allows VSI-FAX to automatically fax business documents directly from your company and desktop applications through outsourced fax service providers.

The Fax on Demand Connector for VSI-FAX is easy to implement and easy to use. It requires no custom programming, no disruption of existing business processes, and no changes to existing file formats. Once the Fax on Demand Connector is configured and enabled, a job can be submitted to the Esker on Demand server from VSI-FAX.

Two Fax on Demand devices are installed by default (FoDC and FoDC2). The first one points to the USA Esker on Demand server while the second one point to the European Esker on Demand server. Having two possible servers allows failover management, meaning that if a Fax on Demand destination is not available, then your faxes can be automatically processed by the other connector waiting for the primary location to be available again. Refer to Managing failover with the Fax on Demand Connector to learn more about his feature.

Important
You do not need to purchase any additional license to fax through Esker on Demand; the Fax on Demand Connector is included within all standard VSI-FAX licenses.

Configuration overview

There are two parts to setting up the Fax on Demand Connector in VSI-FAX:

1. Establishing an Esker on Demand account.
2. Configuring and enabling the Fax on Demand Connector.

Each part is covered in detail in this documentation.

Establishing an Esker on Demand account

To have access to the Esker on Demand server, you need to:

1. Obtain an Esker on Demand ID and password. For this, contact your Esker Account Manager and ask for an Esker on Demand account to be created for your company.
2. Know the name of the Esker on Demand server you'll be communicating with. This information is provided by Esker when your Esker on Demand account is opened.
3. Have an Internet connection between VSI-FAX at your site and the Esker on Demand server.

Configuring and enabling the Fax on Demand Connector

VSI-FAX Server installation program automatically installs the Fax on Demand Connector and creates a fax destination called FoDC and another one named FoDC2 for you. The FoDC2 destination is disabled by default.

This is the destination to use for sending fax jobs to the Esker on Demand server.

To be able to fax thru Esker on Demand, you simply need to enter the following Esker on Demand connection information in the server configuration file and enable the Fax on Demand Connector (it is disabled by default after setup):

- **Hostname** : The hostname or IP address of the Esker on Demand server you received from your Esker Account Manager. Set it to your main location for the main FoDC device (FoDC) and to the other location for the failover device (FoDC2), according to:
  - **USA** server: na.ondemand.esker.com
  - **European** server: as1.ondemand.esker.com
- **Account ID** : The Esker on Demand ID you received from your Esker Account Manager. Set the same value for both devices.
- **Password** : The Esker on Demand password you received from your Esker Account Manager. Set the same value for both devices.

This can be done from VSI-FAX Server Administration or from a command shell.

Command line

Log on to the VSI-FAX Server with the vsifax user, open a command prompt on your computer and enter the following:

```
vfxadmin config -a -i FODC DEVICE hostname na.ondemand.esker.com
vfxadmin config -a -i FODC DEVICE accountid myaccount222
vfxadmin config -a -e -i FODC DEVICE password mypasswordxxx

vfxadmin config -a -i FODC2 DEVICE hostname as1.ondemand.esker.com
vfxadmin config -a -i FODC2 DEVICE accountid myaccount222
vfxadmin config -a -e -i FODC2 DEVICE password mypasswordxxx
```

The example above sets the USA location as main device and the European location as failover device.

Once configured, you need to enable the main Fax on Demand Connector by entering the following (you can also start the VSI-FAX administration interface, if Fax on Demand failover is enabled, which is the default status for this feature, as it will automatically enable the main Fax on Demand device).

```
vfxadmin enable fodc
```

MMC

1. Open VSI-FAX Server Administration.
2. Connect to the appropriate VSI-FAX server with vsifax user.
3. Expand the tree view in the left pane and click on Devices. You should see the FoDC device (disabled) in the right pane.
4. Right-click on **FoDC** in the right pane, and select Properties:
   - On the General tab, check the hostname and change it if necessary (see above for available destinations).Enter your Esker on Demand account ID and password in the AccountID and Password fields respectively.

- Check Enabled to enable the Fax on Demand Connector.
- Click Apply to apply your modifications and OK to complete.

5. Right-click **FoDC2** in the right pane, and select Propertie s:
   - On the General tab, check the hostname and change it if necessary (see above for available destinations).
   - Enter your Esker on Demand account ID and password in the AccountID and Password fields respectively.
   - Leave the device as Disabled (do **not** check the Enabled otpion).
   - Click Apply to apply your modifications and OK to complete.

Configuring a proxy for the Fax on Demand Connector

If you need to use a proxy to connect to the Fax on Demand service, you need to configure VSI-FAX so that it can connect properly. To do so, you need to add keys in the **vsisrv.ini** file and reload VSI-FAX when done. These keys define the proxy name, its port, the username and the password used to access the proxy.

To add these keys, we advise that you use the vfxadmin command line four times as following:

```
vfxadmin config -a -i FODC DEVICE proxy-host myproxy.example.com
vfxadmin config -a -i FODC DEVICE proxy-user myproxyuser
vfxadmin config -a -e -i FODC DEVICE proxy-password myproxypassword
vfxadmin config -a -i FODC DEVICE proxy-port 8080
```

Important note
Notice the **-e** option used to specify the password. It enables encryption, which is required to store the password for the proxy.

For more information about the vfxadmin command, refer *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation.

Testing the Fax on Demand Connector

1. Create a simple text document called test.txt and at a command prompt issue the command:

   ```
   vfx -n +<fax number> -d FoDC test.txt
   ```

   where <fax number> is a fax number you have access to. The response should be the job number.

   Example:

   ```
   > C:\temp>vfx -n +<fax number> -d FoDC test.txt
   > 1005
   ```

2. At a command prompt you can now issue the command `vfxstat` to check the status of the job:

   Example (using the job number retrieved in the previous example):

   ```
   C:\temp>vfxstat 1013

   Status for VSI-FAX fax job: 1005
   Submitted by: joes E-mail : <none>
   Submit time : 10/14 14:17 Queue : FoDC
   Result : done Status : Normal
   To name : <none> From name : <none>
   To company : <none> From company: <none>
   To fax # : +8280024 From fax # : <none>
   To voice # : <none> From voice #: <none>
   Subject : <none>
   Num dialed : 8280024
   File 1 : 1 pg test.txt
   Total pgs : 1 pg
   Attempt Send-Time Result CSI
   ```

```
------- ----------- ------------------ ---------------
1 10/14 14:18 Normal <none>
```

Changing your Fax on Demand Connector information

On occasion, you may need to change your Fax on Demand Connector Account ID, password, or hostname. This information is stored in your `vsisrv.ini` file. You can change the hostname and the Account ID from this file but not the password (which is encrypted in this file):

1. Use a text editor to edit the `VSIFAX\lib\vsisrv.ini` file. Find the `[DEVICE:FoDC]` section of the file. Edit the following fields as needed:
    - `hostname` : The hostname or IP address of the Esker on Demand server, from your Esker Account Manager
    - `accountID` : The Esker on Demand ID you received from your Esker Account Manager.
    - `dial-convert` : When set `ON` , converts the dialstring according to the rules found in `dialcvt.lst`.

    Note
    The other fields in the section are advanced fields for Technical Support only. Save your changes and close the file.
2. Restart the VSI-FAX scheduler by typing the command `vfxsched restart`.
3. To change the password, you need to edit the general properties of the FoDC device in VSI-FAX Server Administration or open a command shell and issue the `vfxadmin config -a -e -i FODC DEVICE password mypasswordxxx` command.

Sending a fax using Fax on Demand

Once you have the Fax on Demand Connector configured and enabled, you can send faxes using Fax on Demand.

To send a fax using command lines: create and submit a job, and specify the destination/queue as FoDC, which was automatically created during the Fax on Demand Connector installation. For example:

```
vfx -n +6085551212 -d FoDC test.txt
```

You can also send faxes thru Fax on Demand from VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client. As a prerequisite, set FoDC as the default device either at the server's level or for the client only (open VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client application, select Tools > Options from the main window, open the Outgoing tab and set the Queue field to FoDC).

Then send your fax either by selecting Fax > New from the application toolbar or by printing the file on the VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client Printer from the source application.

Troubleshooting
How you should format destination fax numbers when submitting faxes via Esker on Demand depends on the telephone system of the country where the Fax on Demand server you are communicating with is located.
By default, the FoDC FIM communicates with a server located in the United States. If you are faxing from the United States, you should have no problem. Enter American local fax numbers to send faxes within the United States, and use international fax numbers to send faxes outside the United States.
If you are faxing from France, the Fax on Demand server whose hostname you have been provided with is located in France. You should enter French local fax numbers to send faxes within the France, and use international fax numbers to send faxes outside France.
In all cases, **we strongly recommend to you always use internationalized fax numbers** as it will guarantee that your fax is properly sent whatever the Fax on Demand device used.

Canceling a fax sent through Fax on Demand

You can cancel a fax job sent to the Esker on Demand server using the `vfxcancel` command. For more information on the `vfxcancel` command options, see *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation. You

can also cancel outgoing faxes from VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client provided client-side archiving is enabled and you see outgoing faxes in the Outbox. Keep the following in mind when canceling jobs sent using the Fax on Demand Connector:

- You can cancel a fax job that has not been transferred to Esker on Demand yet, which means that it is still in the FoDC device's queue. However, performing a cancel action on a fax that has already been submitted to Esker on Demand (i.e. the fax is in the FoDC hold queue) may be too late depending on which step(s) the document has already been through on Esker's side. You are not guaranteed that your cancel action will be effectively taken into account.
- VSI-FAX receives updates on the status of faxes from the Esker on Demand server once every minute. Because of this, you may see a fax with the status of "queued" that has, in reality, already been sent. If you try to cancel a fax in this case, you will receive an error.

Receiving notifications about Fax on Demand fax jobs

Jobs sent from VSI-FAX to the Esker on Demand server are logged in the outbound fax log just as other VSI-FAX jobs are. To view the outbound fax log, type `vfxolog`. For more information on the `vfxolog` command options, see *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation.

Customizing the header in outgoing faxes

By default, the following type of header is added to any fax sent using Fax on Demand:

```
Date: <Date> | From: <CompanyName> | Page <CurPage> of <Pages>
```

- `<Date>` is filled with the date when the fax was composed.
- `<CompanyName>` is the company name you enter during server setup.
- `<CurPage>` is filled with the current page number in the fax transmission.
- `<Pages>` is filled with the total number of pages in the fax transmission.

The pipe character (|) is used to divide the header string into three parts on the fax page:

- The first part is left-justified on the fax page
- The middle-part is centered on the fax page
- The right part is right-justified on the fax page

You can customize this header by editing the `header` parameter's value in the `[DEVICE:FoDC]` section of the vsisrv.ini server configuration file:

```
[DEVICE:FoDC]
header=Date: <Date> | From: Esker | Page <CurPage> of <Pages>
```

In the header parameter's value, you can enter the syntax that suits your needs. For example, you can:

- Add constant text (e.g. change labels).
- Add variables among the List of supported variables for Fax on Demand faxes' headers below.

For example:

```
[DEVICE:FoDC]
header=Today's Date: <Date> | From <FromName> to <ToName> | <Pages>
```

For a completely blank page header, use a single space.

Limitation

If you use `<CurPage>` in your custom syntax, the resulting header will be the standard page header notwithstanding your custom syntax.

Note
Editing the `vsisrv.ini` file is the only way to customize the fax header of faxes sent using Fax on Demand. You cannot do it via `vfxadmin config` command or using VSI-FAX Server Administration.

List of supported variables for Fax on Demand faxes' headers

The two following sections provide you with reference information on the variables that you can use in the `header` parameter's value in `vsisrv.ini` file. Put the name inside angle brackets to designate it as a variable. For example, to specify the message subject, use `<Subject>`.

Variable	Description
Message values	
Subject	Subject of the message
Date	Date when the message was composed
Message	Cover page message text
Page	Current page number in the message
Pages	Total number of pages in the message
CurDate	Current date
CurTime	Current time
CurPage	Current page number in this transmission
CurPages	Total number of pages in this transmission
Sender/Recipient values*	
Name	Name
Company	Company name
Dept	Department
Mail	Mailing address, including city and state
Country	Country
Postal	Postal or zip code
Voice	Voice telephone number
Fax	Fax telephone number
Email	Email address
Account	Account number
SUB	Sub-address
Station Id	Station ID

* These variables are used as either From.VariableName or To.VariableName, depending on whether you want to specify the sender or the recipient information. For example, to specify the recipient fax number, use `<To.Fax>`.

Troubleshooting Fax on Demand Connector network issues

The Fax on Demand Connector of your VSI-FAX server uses an Internet link to send faxes and instructions to the Esker on Demand servers. If the quality and/or speed of this link is not sufficient, network packets can be lost, causing request timeouts. If handled incorrectly, such request timeouts can lead to be "stuck" indefinitely in your FoDC queue.

Note
This section is intended for advanced VSI-FAX administrators.

To prevent this issue, VSI-FAX relies on three timeout management mechanisms:

1. First of all, the **fodcpgm** process, which manages the FoDC devices, will wait for a TCP timeout or an acknowledgment of receipt for 300 seconds after having sent the http request. This first delay is the standard timeout delay for all http requests.
2. After this delay, if this process is still waiting for a TCP timeout notification, the FIM management process will wait another 100 seconds before registering the FoDC job as failed. This 400 seconds delay is the execution timeout.
3. If the **fodcpgm** process is still running 700 seconds after the initial http request was sent, in spite of the above two timeout triggers, the VSI-FAX scheduler will kill and restart it. Once this process has been restarted, the VSI-FAX scheduler will try to send your fax once more. This final timeout mechanism is the maximum idle delay.

The above 300, 400 and 700 timeout delays should be suitable in most cases. However, if you are using a slow Internet connection and notice that the timeout delays are not long enough, you can choose to adjust these timeout delays.

Follow these steps if you wish to change the length of the above timeout delays:

1. Stop the VSIFAX server.
2. Use a text editor to edit the `VSIFAX\lib\vsisrv.ini` file:
   - Find the `[DEVICE:FoDC]` and `[DEVICE:FoDC-hold]` sections of the file and add or alter the following lines:

     ```
     request-timeout=<request timeout value>
     ```

     Where `<request timeout value>` is the value you wish to set for the standard timeout delay for all http requests (by default 300 seconds).

     ```
     exec-timeout=<exec timeout value>
     ```

     Where `<exec timeout value>` is the value you wish to set for the execution timeout (by default 400 seconds).
   - Find the `[VFXSCHED]` section of the file and add or alter the following line:

     ```
     MaxFimIdle=<Freeze timeout value>
     ```

     Where `<Freeze timeout value>` is the value you wish to set for the maximum idle delay (by default 700 seconds).
3. Restart the VSIFAX server to apply your modifications.

Managing failover with the Fax on Demand Connector

When sending faxes, if a device fails it is interesting to redirect the jobs queue to another device. Fax failover management depends on the type of device that fails (local device or Fax on Demand Device).

Fax on Demand device failure

A Fax on Demand device failure can occur if the main Fax on Demand server is unreachable. Fax on Demand failover management is **enabled by default**.

How does it work?

By default, the FoDC device is enabled and the FoDC2 device is disabled, thus the **FoDC device is the main Fax on Demand device**, and if it fails more than a certain amount of times to send a fax it will be disabled and the **FoDC2 device (the failover device)** will be enabled to process the faxes instead. You can configure after how many attempts the main Fax on Demand device will be disabled.

If a failover has occurred and the FoDC device has been disabled, a script will automatically re-enable it (and by the way will also disable the FODC2 device) every 30 minutes (by default), making the configuration back to what it was before the failure.

The failover mechanism is based on a set of scripts:

- `sys-start.tcl`: this script is run when VSI-FAX is launched. It sets up the initial state of the FoDC and FoDC2 devices (i.e. the main device enabled and the failover device disabled).
- sys-devfail.tcl: this scripts called whenever a device fails. It will disable the main device and enable the failover one when the main device fails. Refer to configuring notifications on device failure below to learn more.
- `crontab.lst` and `restorefodc.tcl`: allows the devices configuration to be automatically re-initialized after a certain amount of time after the main device has failed. Refer to Configuring the failover status re-initialization below to learn more.

Submitting faxes with Fax on Demand failover support

The FoDC and FoDC2 devices belongs to a same class, the FODCClass. Therefore, you need to submit your faxes to this class queue so that failover management works properly.

Examples:

To submit a single fax to this class queue enter the following command:

```
vfx –n 555555 –d FoDCClass fax.txt
```

To set the FODCClass as the default submission queue, enter:

```
vfxadmin class –u –d FoDCClass
```

See also
Refer to *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation to learn more about these commands.

Enabling / Disabling the Fax on Demand failover

If you want to disable the failover feature, you need to modify an entry in the vsisrv.ini file. To do so, either edit it with a text editor and locate the `[DEVICE:FoDC]` section. Under this section change the `failover` key to on or off depending on if you want to enable or disable the feature:

```
[DEVICE:FoDC]
debug=off
failover=on
keep-files=off
dial-convert=off
request-timeout=300
...
```

Or you can use the `vfxadmin config` command to achieve the same result, by entering:

```
vfxadmin config -a -i FODC DEVICE failover off
```

Configuring the failover

Configuring the maximum number of attempts on the main device

By default, a device is disabled after three consecutive attempts. You can change this value to any number by editing the vsisrv.ini file. Locate the `[VFXSCHED]` section and and change the `MaxNoResps` key value. Below is an example to set this value to 5 instead of 3:

```
[VFXSCHED]
MaxNoRsps=5
```

You can also use the `vfxadmin config` command to achieve the same result, by entering:

```
vfxadmin config -a VFXSCHED MaxNoRsps 5
```

Important note
Make sure the value set for the `MaxNoRsps` key is **compliant with your current retry strategy**: you want more total retries than the maximum number of fails on a device, or esle you faxes will fail before they have been submitted to the failover device.

Configuring FoDC devices localization

By default, the main device (i.e. FoDC) points to the USA platform and the failover device (FoDC2) points to the European platform. Invert the two locations if you would rather have the European server as main device destination and the USA server as failover location. Those addresses are:

- **USA**: na.ondemand.esker.com
- **European**: as1.ondemand.esker.com

Configuring notifications on device failure

If you want to be notified by email when the main device fails, you need to set the address to which the email will be sent in the `sys-devfail.tcl` script:

```
set EMAIL "<youremail@company.com>"
```

Configuring the failover status re-initialization

When the main device fails, it is disabled and faxes are routed to the failover device. After a certain amount of time, VSI-FAX will rollback to the default devices configuration (i.e. the main device will be enabled and the failover device disabled). This is done via scripts:

- The Crontab.lst file contains the call to the main re-initialisation srcipt:

  ```
  !5 * * * * exec-online ./faxtcl "../lib/enp/restorefodc.tcl"
  ```

  By default the main script is called every 5 minutes. You can change this value if needed.
- The Restorefodc.tcl script is the re-initialization script that actually enables and disables devices. This script allows you to configure the amount of time before the main device is re-enabled after a failure. To do so, set the MAX_DOWN_TIME_MIN value to the amount of minutes you want:

  ```
  set MAX_DOWN_TIME_MIN 30
  ```

Local device failure

This section describes how you can use the device fail script to handle local fax failover by routing faxes to the Fax on Demand device in case of fax board failure.

Configuring the maximum number of attempts before the device fails

By default, a device is disabled after three consecutive attempts. You can change this value to any number by editing the vsisrv.ini file. Locate the `[VFXSCHED]` section and and change the `MaxNoResps` key value. Below is an example to set this value to 5 instead of 3:

```
[VFXSCHED]
MaxNoRsps=5
```

You can also use the `vfxadmin config` command to achieve the same result, by entering:

```
vfxadmin config -a VFXSCHED MaxNoRsps 5
```

Important note

Make sure the value set for the `MaxNoRsps` key is **compliant with your current retry strategy**: you want more total retries than the maximum number of fails on a device, or esle you faxes will fail before they have been submitted to the failover device.

Below is a sample `sys-devfail.tcl` file (whish script is executed whenever a device fail), which shows how to route the faxes to the Fax on Demand devices in case of local fax board failure. This sample actually defines the FoDDCClass as default class and enables the correct mainFoDC device, therefore using all the failover capacities of the Fax on Demand configurations.

This sample logs the device failure and the failure reason in `%VSI-FAX%/spool/ logs/devfail`, and sends it sends a notification email to an administrator, before routing the faxes to Fax on Demand devices..

```
#-------------------------------------------------------
# sys-devfail.tcl
```

```
# Failover : VSI-FAX Device failure notification and Failover to FODC for Windows
#-----------------------------------------------------------
set VSIFAX $env(VSIFAX)

# ---------------------------------------------------------------------------
# Configurable globals
# ---------------------------------------------------------------------------
set FODC_MAIN_DEVICE "FoDC"
set FODC_FAILOVER_DEVICE "FoDC2"
set EMAIL ""

global argv env
set DEVICE [lindex $argv 0]
set REASON [lindex $argv 1]
set TIMESTAMP [ clock format [ clock seconds ] -format {%Y/%m/%d %H:%M:%S} ]
set FAILOVER_DEVICE ""

# ---------------------------------------------------------------------------
# Update log file & send a notification email
# ---------------------------------------------------------------------------
if {[string length "$FAILOVER_DEVICE"] > 0} {
     set ERROR "Device $DEVICE failed: $REASON. Enabling $FAILOVER_DEVICE"
} else {
     set ERROR "Device $DEVICE failed: $REASON."
}

set f [ open $VSIFAX/spool/logs/devfail a+ ]
puts $f "$TIMESTAMP $ERROR"
close $f

if {[string length "$EMAIL"] > 0} {
     #-----------------------------------------------------------------------
     # Create email file
     #-----------------------------------------------------------------------
     set g [ open $VSIFAX/spool/temp/devfail w+ ]
     puts $g "$TIMESTAMP $ERROR"
     close $g

     #-----------------------------------------------------------------------
     # Email notification to specified mail address
     #-----------------------------------------------------------------------
     catch {exec "$VSIFAX/lbin/vmime" -t -s $ERROR "$VSIFAX/spool/temp/devfail" |
"$VSIFAX/lbin/vmail" -R $EMAIL $EMAIL}
     file delete "$VSIFAX/spool/temp/devfail"
}



if {[string length "$FAILOVER_DEVICE"] > 0} {
    #-----------------------------------------------------------
    # Fax on Demand failover management
    #-----------------------------------------------------------
     catch {exec "$VSIFAX/bin/vfxadmin" enable $FAILOVER_DEVICE}
     catch {puts stdout "Enabling $FAILOVER_DEVICE"}
}
else {
    #-----------------------------------------------------------
    # Local device failover management:
    # Issue command to set the FoDCClass as default queue
    # and set the FoDC device as default device (enabled)
    # and the FoDC2 device as failover device (disabled)
    #-----------------------------------------------------------
    exec "$VSIFAX\\bin\\vfxadmin" class -u -d FodCClass
    exec "$VSIFAX\\bin\\vfxadmin" device -u -d -E on FodC
    exec "$VSIFAX\\bin\\vfxadmin" device -u -E off FodC2
```

```
}

exit 0
```

See also

Refer to Fail notify procedures for more samples of such scripts for Windows and Unix/Linux.

Refer to *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation for information about the VSI-FAX commands used.

Automatic overflow to the FODC FIM

Overflow automatically switches from local outbound faxing to Esker on Demand outbound faxing when the local outbound faxing delay is too high. This feature provides better handling of fax peaks and un-planned fax-mailings.

To activate this functionality, write a script that executes a `vfxstat` command and when there are "X" amount of fax jobs in the outbound queue it launches the `vfxadmin default` command. Contact Esker Technical Support Staff if you need help.

Fax Fundamentals

Fax Fundamentals

This section introduces and briefly describes various fundamental concepts that should be thoroughly understood before you begin administering your VSI-FAX server.

Important terms and concepts

This section defines some important terms and concepts that you should understand before you begin administering your fax server.

Fax devices

Fax devices can be either single-channel modems or multi-channel fax boards.

There are also three special devices: loopback (lb), sendmail (sm) and Fax on Demand Connector (FoDC).

The loopback device is used to route fax requests back to the originating user's fax inbox.

The sendmail device is used to send faxes as email attachments.

The Fax on Demand Connector device is used to send faxes through Esker on Demand fax provider. The VSI-FAX server sends fax transmission requests in XML format to a remote Esker on Demand server. The Esker on Demand server sends the faxes and notifies the originating VSI-FAX server of the fax transmission status. To use the Fax on Demand connector device, you must specify the hostname of the On Demand server to use, your On Demand Account ID and password, and then activate the device. You can do this from VSI-FAX Server Administration on Windows or from a command shell. For more information, refer to Fax on Demand Connector.

Classes

Faxes can be sent to either a single physical device or a group of devices called a `class`. For example, a class could be a group of devices dedicated to long distance calls, or a group of devices used only for high-volume fax requests. A class can only contain physical devices; it cannot contain other classes. However, any device can be included in one or more classes. When a fax is sent to a class, it will be routed to the first available device in that class.

Queues

Each device and class has a queue. Pending fax requests are held in the queue until the job is completed.

Users

To send or receive faxes, a person must be registered in the fax server user database. User information is the most basic and unique information about each fax user, such as username and password. Most fax settings and privileges are actually controlled via profiles.

License

You need a VSI-FAX license to install and run VSI-FAX Server. There are various types of VSI-FAX licenses:

- `Evaluation license` (i.e. "eval"): This is the license installed when you enter no license information during setup. It allows you to test the product and see if it matches your needs. You can use this license during a limited period of 30 days. Once the evaluation license has expired, you can reactivate it with another time-limited evaluation license or with a regular production license requested from Esker.

- `Time-limited evaluation license` (i.e. "date"): Evaluation license that expires on a given date.
- `Regular production license` (i.e. "real"): Time-unlimited production license.

Licensed devices

The VSI-FAX license controls the numbers ports used by modems and fax board devices on the server. If your license allows you to use a certain number of ports (for example, 24), you cannot exceed this number otherwise the VSI-FAX Fax Server will stop.

If you have a licensing problem, this might be because you are using too many ports with the current license. For more information, refer to Troubleshooting licensing problems due to the number of devices used

Licensed user

VSI-FAX uses a pure client/server architecture. Even users logged directly into the fax server are in fact communicating with the fax server via a network connection; this network connection just happens to have the same IP address as the server. If you send a fax from a different IP address than the fax server (i.e., you do not telnet, rlogin, or use the keyboard at the fax server), you must be registered as a licensed user on the server to do so.

VSI-FAX uses scalable user licensing. Each license specifies a certain number of licensed users (e.g. 10). For example, you can buy a five-user license initially and upgrade to a 25-user license or to an unlimited user license later.

Serial number and activation key

All VSI-FAX licenses are comprised of two elements: a Serial Number and an encrypted Activation Key. You must have **both** pieces of information in order to install and run VSI-FAX Server. They are provided when you buy licenses from Esker.

Note
Maintenance keys have been removed in version 6.0 ; you need to contact your Esker Sales Representative to obtain a new license when you want to upgrade your fax server to a newer version.
You should contact Esker directly to obtain a new license when you need more features or more capacity on your production server (e.g., more remote clients, more devices, or more virtual servers.). Once you have the new license, you can reactivate the licence from the command shell or from VSI-FAX Server Administration. For more information, see See Reactivating VSI-FAX Server license.

Profiles

Profiles provide centralized management of fax user settings and privileges

Master Profile	The master profile is created during fax server installation. Depending on how you use it, the master profile can provide completely centralized control over a user's fax settings and privileges.
User Profiles	Unless a user profile exists for a fax user, all fax settings and privileges are centrally controlled from the master profile. If you want to grant certain users greater flexibility or privileges, create a user profile for them.
Inheritance	If a user profile exists for a fax user, each time they accesses the fax server (e.g., send a fax or explicitly log into the fax server for some other reason), their user profile is dynamically created at that moment by merging the inheritable settings from the master profile with persistent user preferences stored in their user profile. If the user explicitly logs in to the fax server, these settings remain in effect until the user logs off.

Important
Do not delete the master profile under any circumstances.

If you want to use the settings from your user profile, you must specify it when sending the fax. To send a single fax request using your profile settings, include this on your vfx command line:

```
vfx ... -t udf="yes"
```

To send a single fax request without using your profile settings, include this on your vfx command line:

```
vfx ... -t udf="no"
```

Note
If you do not want to use your profile settings to send a fax, you can also omit the `udf` tag from your fax envelope. Not including it is the same as setting it to false or no.

Directories

Directories store fax addressing and routing (i.e., fax recipient) information.

People	People records store fax addressing and routing information for a single individual.
Groups	Group records are lists of people. They are a convenient method of sending the same fax to multiple people. This is useful for faxing an entire department or marketing prospect list. Groups can also be used to receive faxes for an entire workgroup, allowing any member of that group to process received faxes on behalf of the entire group. This is useful for departments like Customer Support or Sales where fax supports duties can be shared among various persons in the group.
Public directory	There is only one public directory. It is read-only to all fax users and can be used to send or route faxes to anyone listed in the public directory. Only fax administrators can modify information in the public directory.
Private directories	Private directories are owned by a particular user and are typically controlled so only that user can access these entries. Only one private directory can be displayed at a time, and the owner is the only person who can modify information in that private directory.
External directories	VSI-FAX supports external Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) directories for storing fax addressing and routing information. However, before you can use an LDAP directory, you must explicitly add it via MMC. Refer to the `VSI-FAX Server Administration` help for additional information.

Resources

Resources are common elements that are available to all users when they send faxes.

Attachments	Attachments are text, PCL, TIFF, Postscript, or Epson files that can be added to a fax transmission. Attachments are usually re-usable items such as price lists and promotional materials that are repeatedly sent. In Windows, attachments may also be any document type supported by DDE.
Cover Pages	VSI-FAX cover pages are template files that dynamically populate themselves with information when a fax is sent. You can use the default cover pages that Esker provides or design your own with CoverMaker.
Folders	Folders are a logical collection of attachment files. When you attach a folder to a fax, all files in that folder are included in the fax.
Overlays	Overlays are files, such as letterhead, that can be placed on top of a fax.

See also
Refer to the VSI-FAX CoverMaker help for information about using CoverMaker to design custom cover pages.

Logs

The fax server generates many different kinds of logs. You can use these logs to troubleshoot problems, get fax status, or review server history.

Event logs	Event logs provide detailed information about each device, class, or fax server process.
Inbound fax log	The inbound fax log maintains a detailed record of each received fax.

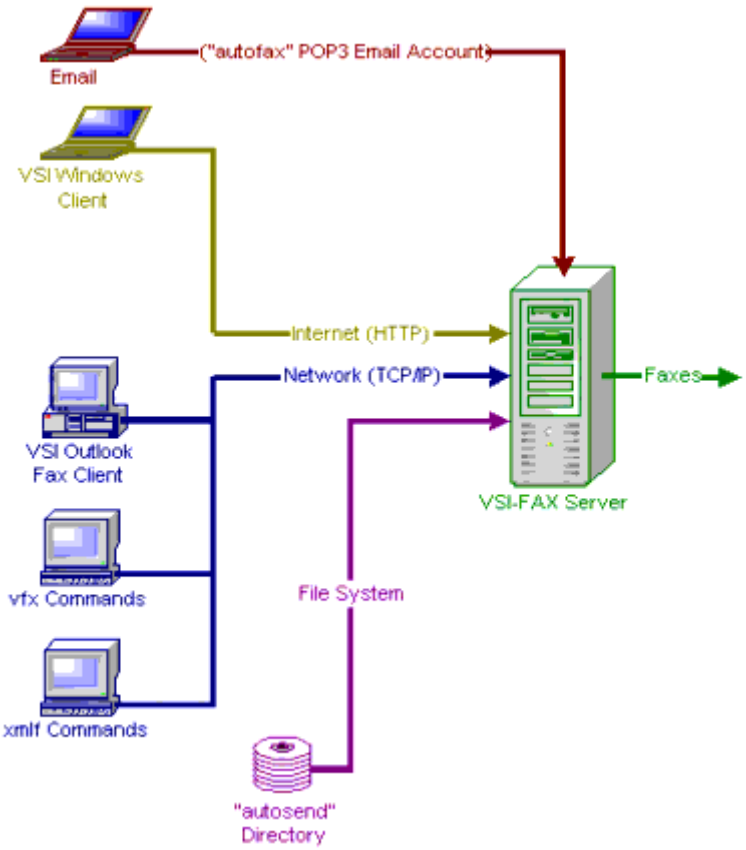
Outbound fax	The outbound fax log maintains a detailed record of each sent fax request.

Functional overview

This section briefly describes how VSI-FAX sends, receives, and routes faxes and how it send email messages.

Sending faxes

One of the primary design goals of VSI-FAX is to provide as many reliable ways as possible to send a fax. You can send a fax by logging on to the fax server and entering information in a command shell, by sending an email message to the fax server, by placing a file in the autosend directory, or via one of our graphical fax clients. This figure shows the various ways you can send faxes with VSI-FAX:



Email

VSI-FAX provides an Email-to-Fax Gateway feature that allows you send faxes via email to the fax server, following these steps:

1. Create a new email user account on your corporate mail server (we recommend that you use autofax for this user account).
2. Enter the fax recipient information in a specific format (i.e., `<fax_number>` or `<fax_number>[subject]`) in your email message subject line.
3. Send your fax email messages to `autofax@my_company.com`.

LanFax Windows Client

Note
Starting with version 6.0, VSI-FAX offers a new LanFax™ Windows Client with enhanced usability to replace VSI-FAX Windows Client. VSI-FAX Windows Client remains available on the CD-ROM as an unsupported client.

The LanFax Windows Client is a front end to the VSI-FAX Server that provides an easy way for you to use VSI-FAX on your desktop. The LanFax Windows Client lets you: send faxes, save drafts of outgoing faxes, view sent faxes through an Outbox, view received faxes through an Inbox, manage phonebooks and customize cover pages.

Using the LanFax Windows Client, you can send faxes using one of two methods:

- Send a fax directly from the LanFax Windows Client
- Send a fax from an application that allows you to print on LanFax Windows Client Printer ("print to fax")

See also
Refer to the VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client help for more information on installing and using the LanFax Windows Client.

Outlook Client

The Outlook Client provides advanced desktop faxing capabilities for Microsoft Outlook and Exchange users.

- The Outlook Client includes a custom form and fax status applet that tightly integrates with the Microsoft Outlook messaging client
- Use your Outlook Contacts folder or Personal Address Book to store your fax recipient information
- Faxes are sent directly to the fax server via your network; they are not routed through the Exchange server.
- Faxes are sent directly to the fax server via your network; they are not routed through the Exchange server.

vfx commands

The simplest way to send a fax is to log on to the VSI-FAX server, open a command shell, and enter a `vfx` command. For example, to fax `my_file.txt` to local fax number 555-1212, enter:

```
vfx -n 555-1212 my_file.txt
```

Note
If you do not specify a device name, the default device will be used.

See also
For more information about `vfx` commands, see Basic Fax Server Administration.

Autosend directory

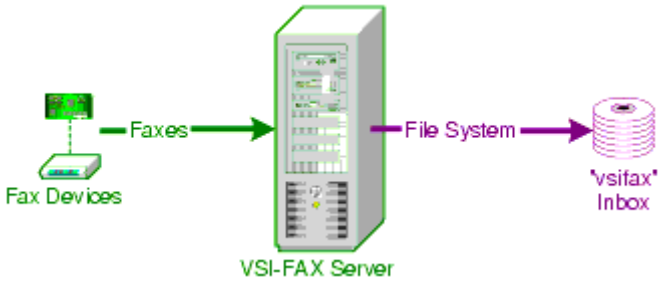
The autosend directory is an advanced feature that allows you to send faxes just by placing special files (i.e., VSI-FAX tag and batch files) in this directory.

Receiving faxes

Receiving faxes is quite different from sending them. Consider that when you send a fax, you begin with various pieces of information, then you rasterize (image) that information into a document that can be transmitted over a telephone line. However, once the document is imaged, it ceases to be anything other than pixels at various gray-scale color depths (it no longer contains anything that can be understood as human-readable data).

Of course, when you receive a fax, the reverse is true. All you know for certain is that a particular fax device (i.e., a modem or channel on a fax board) answered a telephone call and received a fax (i.e, a rasterized file). So while the person sending the fax intends for it to be read by a particular person, in most cases the fax server doesn't have any idea who that person is.

VSI-FAX handles this situation by creating a default inbox for all incoming faxes. It uses the only user account it is certain exists on all systems (user vsifax). Therefore, until you change these settings, the default behavior is that all incoming (received) faxes are placed in user vsifax's inbox as shown in this figure:



Incoming faxes are stored as numbered TIFF files in this directory. You can view these files by going to the vsifax inbox directory and opening them with a multi-page TIFF file viewer.

Important
You must have a multi-page TIFF viewer installed on your system to view received faxes. While most paint programs can open a multi-page TIFF file, they only display the first page and are therefore unsuitable for viewing faxes (in most cases, you will only see the fax cover page). Imaging for Windows is a common multi-page TIFF file viewer that is provided free with Windows. Similar programs are also available for Unix and Linux systems.

You can customize the way VSI-FAX processes received faxes for each inbox. Depending on your settings, VSI-FAX will automatically perform one or more of the following actions each time a fax is received:

- Print the fax (this emulates a standalone fax machine)
- Notify someone via email that a fax has arrived
- Forward the fax as an email attachment

After performing these actions, you can also configure VSI-FAX to do one of the following:

- Delete the received fax
- Archive the received fax (move it from the inbox to another directory)
- Leave the received fax in the inbox

Simple departmental fax routing

You can see that the level of fax routing provided with a default VSI-FAX system is very modest. It is really only suitable for small companies with a single fax telephone number.

If your fax server has more than one fax device (modem or fax board) installed, you can easily extend this default routing behavior by creating a departmental user account for each of your incoming fax numbers. VSI-FAX will automatically create a new fax inbox for each of these departmental users. Furthermore, one of the settings that VSI-FAX stores for each fax device is the default inbox for received faxes. Simply change each device's default inbox to one of your new departmental inboxes and VSI-FAX will route faxes received on a particular telephone line to the correct inbox as shown in this figure:

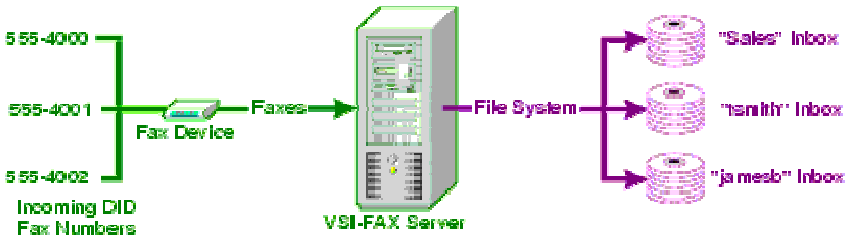
The advantage to this approach is that it is very inexpensive because you do not have to purchase any additional telephone numbers or services from your telephone company.

Routing received faxes

You can simplify departmental routing scheme to cover individual fax users. This is how it works.

Thus far, our discussions have assumed that each fax device can only answer one incoming fax telephone number. This is not exactly true. Contiguous blocks of Direct Inward Dial (DID) telephone numbers can be purchased from most telecom providers. One important feature of these DID numbers is that they are answered from a single trunk telephone line. Therefore, if you connect a fax device to a DID trunk line, that single fax device can actually answer more than one incoming fax telephone number.

DID numbers are typically comprised of a contiguous block of one hundred numbers beginning with xxx-xx00 and ending with xxx-xx99. If a DID number is assigned to each fax user, then VSI-FAX can strip off the last four digits of the incoming fax number and use that information to route the fax to the appropriate user's inbox as shown in the following figure:



When using a Class 2/2.0 fax modem or a Dialogic Brooktrout TR1034 Analog fax board to receive faxes, you can also route received faxes based on DTMF digits detection.

See also

To learn how to turn on DTMF detection for modems or fax boards, refer to Setting a modem or Brooktrout board to detect DTMF.

To learn how to assign a DID or DTMF extension to a user for fax routing, refer to Assigning a DID or DTMF extension to a user.

Sending email messages

VSI-FAX can send two general types of email messages:

- The email submitted to send faxes when using the sm FIM (Send Mail).
- The email notifications (delivery status or reception notifications).

An email gateway is used to send those email messages. VSI-FAX connects to this email gateway and communicates with it using the SMTP protocol (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol).

VSI-FAX Server can connect to any mail server as long as the SMTP protocol is enabled. However, depending on the email gateway, you could have some problems when sending emails. In this case, refer to Emails problems.

Fax Imaging

Fax Imaging

Multi-page Tagged Image File Format (TIFF) is the basic underlying file format used to send all faxes with VSI-FAX. However, you do not have to restrict your faxing to just TIFF files. VSI-FAX uses programs called **formatters** to convert common file types to TIFF files so that they can be faxed. This conversion process is what is referred to as "imaging."

How does VSI-FAX know which formatter to use with which file extension? When the VSI-FAX server is started, one of the tasks performed on start-up is to compile a list of file types that can be handled by the imaging engine. This list is constructed in the following manner:

1. First, VSI-FAX looks in the `formatters.lst` file for an entry that associates the file extension and formatter (for example the entry `doc:doctotif.exe:o:` indicates that all files with a `.doc` extension should be imaged using the DOCTOTIF formatter). All `formatters.lst` entries are added to the list.
2. Then, VSI-FAX queries the list of internal formatters (see Types of formatters for the definition of an "internal" formatter) and adds these entries to the list.
3. Next, VSI-FAX queries the operating system to determine if there are any file type associations that are handled at the OS level. When the fax server is a Windows OS, this list will be the list found under Tools > Folder Options > File Types. When the fax server is a Unix OS, it will look to see if an imaging server has been configured. If an imaging server is configured, the file type available on that system will be retrieved. All of the available file type associations are then added to the list.

   Note

   Once the server starts, you can check the file types than can be handled by entering the following command:

   ```
   vinfo -D -v filetypes | more
   ```

   The result is a list of the file type associations recognized by the VSI-FAX server. From this list, you can tell whether a standard formatter or a DDE print command will be used to image the file. When executed on a Unix fax server, this command will also list the DDE associations for an imaging server if one is configured.
4. When a fax request is submitted to the server, VSI-FAX determines which formatter to use when imaging the file by performing the following checks:
   - Does the file extension (the characters after the "dot" in the file name) match any of the file types on the list created at start-up? If so, use the formatter specified with the extension.
   - If the file has no extension or one that VSI-FAX still cannot associate with a formatter, VSI-FAX will try to determine the file type by examining the first 256 bytes of that file. If VSI-FAX determines that it is a PostScript, PCL, or TIFF file, it will image it using the appropriate formatter. If VSI-FAX cannot determine that it is a PostScript, PCL, or TIFF file, it will image the file as plain ASCII text.

Types of formatters

There are five types of formatters used by VSI-FAX. While differentiation between types of formatters is a construct that is internal to the VSI-FAX program and not a term you will emcounter in the program, knowing the type of the formatter that you want to use will help you determine how and under what circumstances it is accessed by VSI-FAX.

- **Native formatters** : VSI-FAX has support for specific file types. This support is internal to the server and thus provided on all platforms. Native formatters can process `.tif`, `.fax`, `.pcx`, and `.bmp` files.
- **Internal formatters** : these formatters come preconfigured and do not require any additional set up on your part. The internal formatters can be identified by using the -F switch on the VFX command line. They are

usually wrappers which rely on third-party tools that actually create the output TIFF file. Internal formatters are supported on all platforms and can process `.txt`, `.pcl`, `.ep`, `.ps`, `.ps2`, `.pdf`, and simple `.rtf` files.

- **User-defined formatters** : these are specified by the user via the`%VSI-FAX%\lib\formatters.lst` file. The user-defined formatters typically will be used to image specific file types produced by an application installed on the server. For more information, refer to Setting up user-defined formatters.
- **Add-on formatters** : these additional formatters, built and supported by Esker, can be installed on the fax server to handle `.xls`, `.ppt`, `.pdf`, `.doc`, `.htm`, and `.html` files. Add-on formatters can be installed separately with setup <VSI-CD>\server\w32\fmtrs\setup.exe that can be launched from VSI-FAX Autorun. They are document viewers that print on the "VSIFAX server" printer in order to generate a pcl file which will be then converted by PclToTif into a TIFF document. For more information, refer to Setting up add-on formatters
- **External formatters** : this formatter (only available on Windows platforms) uses the application associated to a given extension in the Operating System to image corresponding documents. This formatter relies on direct printing or DDE mechanism to generate a print job on the "VSIFAX server" printer and the resulting PCL file is then converted by PclToTif. It is used to treat files whose extensions cannot be handled by any other formatters. To use it on a "known" file type, you need to create an entry in the formatters.lst as you would for a user-defined formatter. Here is a sample entry associating pdf files with the system default viewer for PDF files (e.g. Acrobat reader): `pdf:mstotif.exe:o:`

The following table shows which types of files (based on their file extensions) use which formatters, and includes information on the type of each formatter:

File extensions	Formatter name (type)	Comments
`.tif`, `.fax`, `.pcx`, `.bmp`	(native)	.fax is a legacy VSI-FAX 2 fax file (not .tif). .tif can be either Group 3 or Group 4. .pcx is a MS Paintbrush file. .bmp is a bitmap file
`.txt`, `.pcl`	PCLTOTIF (internal)	Uses JetPCL to convert standard text, PCL 5e, PCL 6
`.ep`	EPTOTIF (internal)	Epson printer
`.ps`, `.ps2`, `.pdf`	GSTOTIF (internal)	Uses Ghostscript for Postscript Level 1 and 2 and basic PDF.
`.rtf`	RTFTOTIF (internal)	Simple RTF, like those produced by a mail client, using basic rich text formatting commands. When full rich text formatting is used, you must use DOCTOTIF or a user-defined formatter.
`.xls`	XLSTOTIF (add-on)	Excel spreadsheet (.xls only)
`.ppt`	PPTTOTIF (add-on)	PowerPoint file
`.pdf`	PDFTOTIF (add-on)	Uses a PDF viewer instead of Ghostscript. This formatter should be used when the internal Ghostscript formatter fails to image the file correctly.
`.doc`	DOCTOTIF (add-on)	Uses Wordview97.exe to image Word documents and RTF files. Windows only. In case of problems with these converters (new Office features mishandled) you can try to install a current Office on the server and image documents with mstotif converter.
`.htm`, `.html`	HTMTOTIF (add-on)	Uses Esker's HTML Viewer for imaging. This formatter has some limitations. It will not image object files embedded in an HTML page but all basic text components will be handled properly.
`.docx`, `.xlsx` and any file extension in the filetypes list other than those specified	MSTOTIF (external)	Uses Microsoft File Type associations to look for a viewer to render the file (Windows DDE mechanism). You must install Microsoft Office 2007 on the server to be able to

File extensions	Formatter name (type)	Comments
above		process .docx or .xlsx files. Manages the interface to a VSI-FAX imaging server when imaging requests for non-Unix file types are made on a Unix server.

Imaging on a Unix fax server

Unix fax servers are commonly used in environments where legacy applications and print streams are fax enabled. The tools used in these environments are typically `.txt`, `.pcl`, or `.ps`. The internal formatters can process these file types.

If you want to fax Microsoft Office files (Word, Excel, etc.) from a Unix fax server (in a desktop faxing environment, for example) the Unix fax server must be configured to work with a Windows imaging server. The imaging server images file types not normally available on Unix.

See also
See Imaging Server Setup and Configuration for additional information.

Imaging on a Windows fax server

In addition to the file types typically found on Unix servers, a fax server running on Windows is often asked to fax native Windows documents like Word documents.

Esker has add-on formatters which handle the common Windows file types (`.doc`, `.xls`, `.ppt`, `.htm`, `.rtf`). Each of these formatters are built to comply with the Windows Print mechanism:

1. A formatter program (one of the "*TOTIF.exe" files) collects the file and manages the imaging operation.
2. The application associated with that file extension, (either the applicaton that generated the file in the first place, or a viewer program) images the fax, producing a binary file built to GDI (Graphical Device Interface) specifications.

   Note
   One way to determine if an application file type can be rendered is to check for a print preview function in the application. Rendering is essentially performing a Print Preview on the file.
3. Once the file is rendered, the bit stream is handed off to a print driver for conversion from GDI to PCL.
4. Once the PCL file is produced, a TIFF file is created and returned to the VSI-FAX server.

Windows file types not related to an internal or add-on formatter will be handled by the MSTOTIF formatter or will be treated as an ASCII text file depending on the file extension used and whether this file extension appears in the file types list. For a complex file type, the resulting fax will not be formatted as expected and will likely be unreadable (for example, you try to image a spreadsheet and end up with a fax that is 200 pages of garbage text).

Note
Your Windows fax server will almost certainly have other file types registered. Launch Windows Explorer and choose View > Options > File types to see a complete list of all supported file types on your Windows fax server.

VSI-FAX Fax Server service properties

Important
After you install VSI-FAX, we highly recommend that you change the properties of the VSI-FAX Fax Server service to run as a normal user. By default, this service is installed to run as a "Local System Account." Some imaging requires this service to run as a regular user account in order to gain control of the desktop and to comply with Windows security settings.

Setting up add-on formatters

For some file types, you must use an add-on formatter to image the document. (For a list of formatter types and the file types they process, see the table on File extensions). To set up add-on formatters to work, you must:

1. Stop the VSI-FAX server.
2. Set the VSI-FAX server service to log in as an existing user. (See VSI-FAX Fax Server service properties if you want to understand why.)
3. Load your VSI-FAX CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive.
4. If the autorun does not start automatically, run `autorun.exe` located in the root directory of your VSI-FAX CD-ROM.

   The VSI-FAX CD browser appears.
5. Select Add-On Formatters under Fax Server.
6. The Welcome screen appears. Click Next to proceed with the installation.

   The program files are copied to the local hard drive. This may take several seconds.
7. When the Setup Complete screen appears, click Finish.
8. Restart the VSI-FAX server.

Setting up user-defined formatters

For some file types, VSI-FAX appropriately images your files using an internal or native formatter (imaged "right out of the box," so to speak), with no additional setup on your part. (If you are not sure what type of formatter you need, see Types of formatters for an explanation of format types.)

However, to image document types formatted by a user-defined formatter, you must install a tool for formatting the document type and create an association between the file type extension and the tool it should use to format it. To do this:

1. Stop the VSI-FAX server.
2. Set the VSI-FAX server service to log in as an existing user. (See VSI-FAX Fax Server service properties if you want to understand why.)
3. Install either the program that created this document or a viewer appropriate to the document type.
4. Open the `%VSIFAX%\lib\formatters.lst` file in a text editor, and add a line associating the file type with the program or viewer. The construction of the line is as follows:

   `type:program:options:description:`

   Where `type` is the file extension of the files you want to fax (for example, `.xls`),

   `program` is the file (and path, if necessary) you launch to run the program you want to use to image the files (if not fully-qualified, it is interpreted as being in <VSIFAX>\lbin)

   and`options` can take various values listed in the table below (usually you only need the "O" option):

Option	Description
U	The program can use the option "-U clientid" to get user-specific info. If not specified, the clientid is not passed to the program
E	The program can use the option "-E std|fine" to specify output resolution. If not specified, output resolution will be processed externally to the program
l	The program can use the option "-l letter|legal|a4" to specify the page size. If not specified, any page size specification is ignored
p	The program can use the option "-p <page-range> to specify the pages to be processed. If not specified, any page-range information is processed externally to the program
Z	The program can use the option"-Z <options>" to specify program-specific options. If not specified, any file-conversion options are ignored

Option	Description
O	The program can use the option "-o filename" to specify the output file to use. If not specified, it is assumed that the output will be written to stdout

Entries in this file take priority over native and internal conversions. A line starting with # sign is ignored.

Here is an example associating .pdf files with our pdftotif:

```
pdf:viewers\pdftotif.exe:o:
```

5. Save and close the `formatters.lst` file.
6. Restart the VSI-FAX server.

Choosing a formatter

VSI-FAX determines which formatter to use for a given input file based on its extension.

- First it looks for a matching entry in `<VSIFAX>\lib\formatter.lst` file and uses the first one available.
- Then if no specific behavior is specified, it tries to use one of the internal formatters.
- If there is still no match, on Windows platforms, it tries to find an application associated to this extension while on Unix platform, it queries the imaging server (if one is defined).
- If this was not helpful, it tries to determine the file type based on the first few bytes in the file.
- And finally as a last resort it considers the document to be plain text.

Note

It is possible to provide the scheduler with the document file type (avoiding extension analysis and potential mistakes) using `ftp` tag or the `-F` option available on `vfx` command. This way, you can be sure your document will be treated correctly regardless of its name.

To check which file types are defined on the server and how they would be handled, you can use the option `-D -v filetypes` on `vinfo` command. It will show the file types requiring the use of mstotif, the exact commands executed to convert documents, or the DDE arguments used.

Here is a partial sample output:

```
> vinfo -D -v filetypes

list of valid file types:
ps 1 PostScript [tif]
ps2 1 PostScript Level 2 [tif]
pdf 1 Portable Data Format [tif]
tif 1 TIFF [pdf]
pcl 1 PCL [tif]
rtf 1 RTF [tif]
txt 1 Text [tif]
ep 1 Epson [tif]
fax 1 VSIFAX [tif]
bmp 1 Microsoft Bitmap [tif]
pcx 1 Microsoft Paint [tif]
tif 1 TIFF [tif]
arc 4 WinZip File [C:\PROGRA~1\WINZIP\winzip32.exe /print /ni "%1"]
bat 4 MS-DOS Batch File [%SystemRoot%\System32\NOTEPAD.EXE /p %1]
bmp 4 Bitmap Image ["C:\WINNT\system32\mspaint.exe" /p "%1"]
cmd 4 Windows NT Command Script [%SystemRoot%\System32\NOTEPAD.EXE /p %1]
cov 4 Fax Coverpage File [%SystemRoot%\system32\faxcover.exe /p "%1"]
doc 4 Microsoft Word Document [[REM
_DDE_Minimize][FileOpen("%1")][t=IsDocumentDirty()][FilePrint 0][SetDocumentDirty
t][DocClose]]
dot 4 Microsoft Word Template [[REM
_DDE_Minimize][FileOpen("%1")][t=IsDocumentDirty()][FilePrint 0][SetDocumentDirty
```

```
t][DocClose]]
 htm 4 HTML Document ["C:\Program Files\Microsoft Office\OFFICE11\msohtmed.exe" /p
%1]
 html 4 HTML Document ["C:\Program Files\Microsoft Office\OFFICE11\msohtmed.exe" /p
%1]
 pdf 4 Adobe Acrobat Document [[FilePrintSilentEx("%1")]]
 ppt 4 Microsoft PowerPoint Presentation ["C:\Program Files\Microsoft
Office\OFFICE11\POWERPNT.EXE" /p "%1"]
 txt 4 Text Document [%SystemRoot%\system32\NOTEPAD.EXE /p %1]
 xls 4 Microsoft Excel Worksheet [[open("%1")][print()][close()]]
 ...
```

In this sample you can see that PowerPoint files (.ppt) will be imaged by "standard printing", meaning a particular command line wil launch the tool and get it to print. Word documents (.doc) will be printed via DDE. Also note that Txt files should be treated by an internal converter but can be switched over to Notepad (by adding the line `txt:mstotif:o:` in the `formatters.lst` file).

Troubleshooting fax imaging

Generic troubleshooting

When having imaging troubles the first thing to determine is exactly which step in the process is going wrong. Below you will find a diagram summarizing the various steps an incoming file may follow before becoming a valid TIFF file.

To diagnose the issue properly, here are a few classic questions you should try to get answers for:

- Which type of input file is causing problems? All of them, only pdf, only doc, etc. ?
- Is this problem happening for all documents of this type? Or only some of them ?
- Can you provide Technical Support with a sample file you are having problems with ?

Tip

When your input file is a PostScript or PCL file, you can validate its contents by sending the document in raw form to a printer (using a corresponding driver). This forces a processing of the commands in the file and will help you see if the problem is in the conversion or in the original file. In order to do so, use the OS file copy command with your printer as the destination file. For example if you declared a network PS printer named "MyPrinter" located on a print server "PrintServer" you can use the following command:
`> copy input.ps \\PrintServer\MyPrinter`

Usually customer problems appear in the "upper" part of the process, i.e., the creation of a TIF file based on the input document. But sometimes the server is able to generate a proper image which is altered by the Fax Interface Module (FIM) or the fax transfer itself.

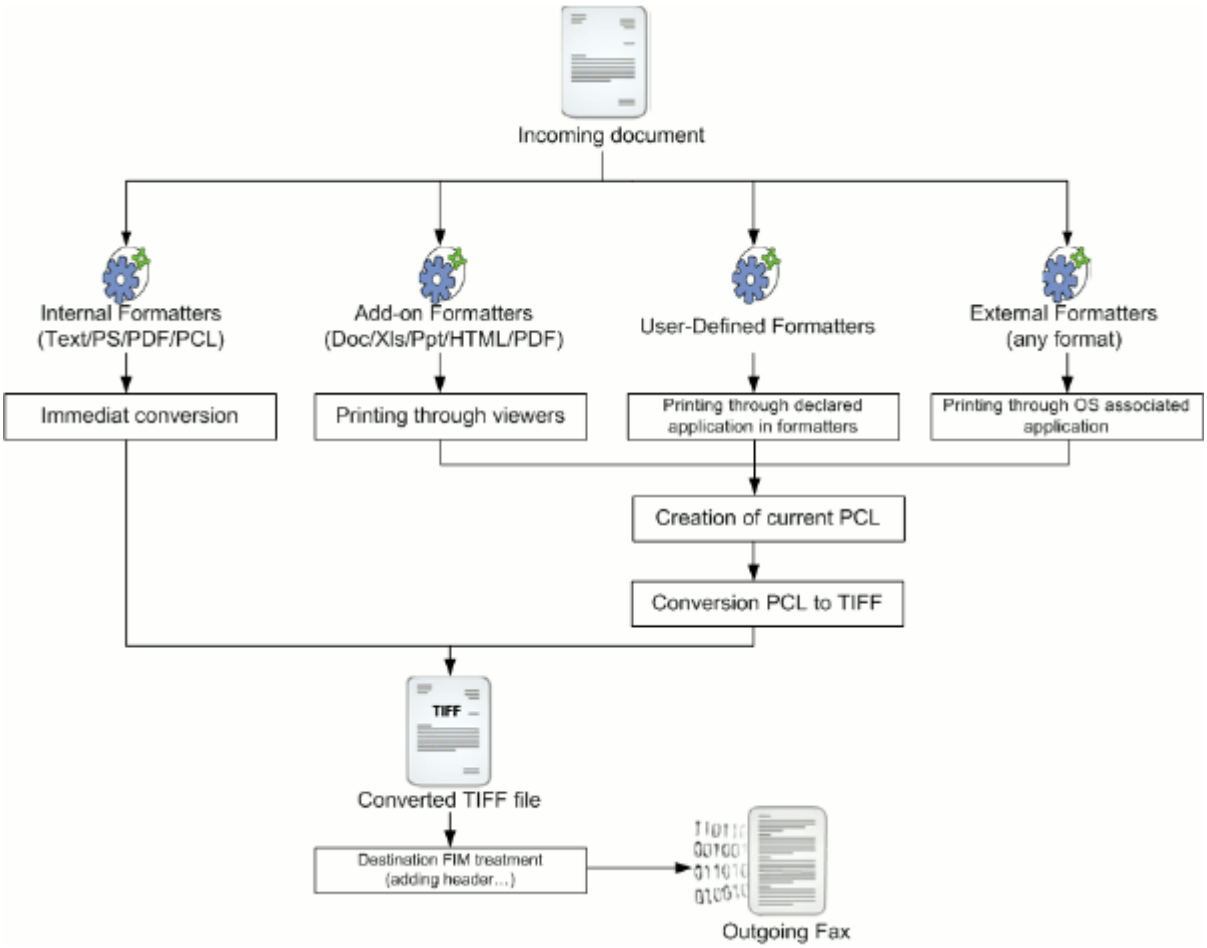
In order to isolate a problem in this part of the process, you may launch a sample `vfx` command with "`-o <filename>`" option. This generates an output TIF file based on your original document in the same way the server would during normal processing therefore allowing easier tests than a full job submission. For example:

```
> vfx -o output.tif input.file
```

- If the output file obtained is correct then the problem comes from the FIM.
- If the imaging problem is visible in the resulting TIF, the problem comes from the conversion.

If you reproduce the issue with one of your files, try to see if this particular file is the only one impacted, and what is different; or if all files for a given format are suspected.

Assuming we are facing a conversion problem, we need to figure out which converter is used and thus which "branch" in the diagram below we are currently going through. This is especially important for formats that can be treated by different converters (text or pdf for example). So you need to review the contents of your `formatters.lst` to be sure that the files are handled as you think they should be. Once you have ensured which formatter is used, refer to its corresponding section in this troubleshooting guide for more detailed information about it.



Tip

Remember that our formatters may not recognize files with "weird" extensions (.0, .file, .tmp) and the file will end up being considered as plain text which can lead to behaviors such as transforming an image or PDF/Word document into many pages of ASCII. In this case, try changing the input file extension and see if the output is better.

Converter specific troubleshooting

Internal formatters

GSTOTIF

This converter relies on Ghostscript to manage Postscript files and PDF files. To diagnose if the problem comes from the converter or from the way it is launched by the server, run Gstotif with a -o option (similar to the one we used with vfx). For example with a pdf file:

```
> gstotif -o output.tif input.pdf
```

Note

VSI-FAX server includes a "standard" version of Ghostscript installed in <VSIFAX>\lib\ghostscript and gstotif is really a simple wrapper over this installed version. By adding the -D flag on the previous command you can see the parameters actually provided to Ghostscript.

```
> gstotif -D -o output.tif input.pdf
0: C:\Program Files\VSI-FAX\FaxServer\lib\ghostscript\bin\gs.exe
1: -dNOPAUSE
```

```
 2: -dBATCH
 3: -q
 4: -sDEVICE=tiffg3
 5: -IC:\Program Files\VSI-FAX\FaxServer\lib\ghostscript\lib;C:\Program
Files\VSI-FAX\FaxServer\lib\ghostscript\fonts
 6: -sOutputFile=C:\Program Files\VSI-FAX\FaxServer\spool\temp\tmp00564aa.tif
 7: GV_TOTALRN_99.pdf
```

So if this command is not working properly, you can try to go into <VSIFAX>\lib\ghostscript\bin and launch Ghostscript directly (gs.exe) with all these parameters (except -d and -q ones which are only useful within server integration):

```
gs -sDEVICE=tiffg3 -I%vsifax%\lib\ghostscript\lib;%vsifax%\lib\ghostscript\fonts -
sOutputFile=c:\ouput.tif c:\inputfile.pdf
```

If you get an error at this stage, the problem is not in VSI-FAX but in Ghostscript itself. The solution could be to upgrade Ghostscript and see if a more recent version behaves better. You can access latest builds of Ghostscript on this website: http://www.cs.wisc.edu/~ghost. Note that due to Ghostscript licensing, Esker is only allowed to distribute GPL versions but customers can download AFPL versions on their own.

Updating Ghostscript on a Windows platform

VSI-FAX always looks for the gs.exe in the same place so to upgrade Ghostscript on Windows the idea is to install it in a new folder; and then replace the current working directory with this new one. Some changes are needed though, so here is a procedure you can follow (as an example, it is given for the version 8.15 of ghostscript):

1. Create a new sub-directory in the VSI-FAX lib directory called "GSUpgrade".
2. Save the newer version of the GhostScript converter to this sub-directory.
3. Execute Ghostscript installation and click on Setup.
4. On the GPL Ghostscript Setup dialog box, under "Install to directory", browse to the VSI-FAX lib\GSUpgrade directory, click OK and then Install.
5. This will create a sub-directory called "gs" and this will contain 2 sub-directories called "fonts" and "gs8.15".
6. Create a new sub-directory in the VSI-FAX lib directory called "Ghostscript_new".
7. Create a new sub-directory in the VSI-FAX lib\Ghostscript_new directory called "fonts".
8. Create a new sub-directory in the VSI-FAX lib\Ghostscript_new directory called "bin".
9. Create a new sub-directory in the VSI-FAX lib\Ghostscript_new directory called "lib".
10. Copy all the files from the VSI-FAX lib\GSUpgrade\fonts directory to the VSI-FAX lib\Ghostscript_new\fonts directory.
11. Copy all the files from the VSI-FAX lib\GSUpgrade\gs8.15\bin directory to the VSI-FAX lib\Ghostscript_new\bin directory.
12. Copy all the files from the VSI-FAX lib\GSUpgrade\gs8.15\lib directory to the VSI-FAX lib\Ghostscript_new\lib directory.
13. In the VSI-FAX lib\Ghostscript_new\bin directory copy and paste the file gswin32c.exe (in the same folder) and rename the copy to gs.exe.
14. Stop the VSI-FAX scheduler.
15. Rename your VSI-FAX lib\Ghostscript directory to VSI-FAX lib\Ghostscript_old.
16. Rename your VSI-FAX lib\Ghostscript-new directory to VSI-FAX lib\Ghostscript.
17. Start the VSI-FAX scheduler.

Installation note

In recent versions of Ghostscript, **the \fonts subfolder doesn't exist anymore**. However the procedure is exactly the same as the one described above except for the parts concerning the \fonts folder.

Updating Ghostscript on a Unix platform

Unfortunately upgrading Ghostscript on Unix is not as easy as on Windows. Indeed no binaries are available for these platforms on the official website, only the sourcecode. So you will either need to retrieve these sources from the website and compile them following Ghostscript instructions or find a binary version for their platform on websites providing "built" versions of this tool (such as Sunfreeware.com).

Once you get your compiled version of Ghostscript:

1. Go to $VSIFAX/lib/ghostscript/bin.
2. Backup the old gs file (ghostscript v7 executable).
3. Copy the new ghostscript binary in this folder.
4. The ghostscript executable needs to be called gs. Rename it if needed.

PCLTOTIF

Wrapping JetPCL, this converter is in charge of text, PCL and by design all other formats with conversions based on the printing mechanism. You can launch Pcltotif manually and generate a TIFF file in a similar way as vfx -o. This can point out if the problem is in the converter itself or in the way the server handles it.

```
> pcltotif -o output.tif input.file
```

Additionally here is a list of options you can use to alter the output based on your input file. These flags are normally set by VSI-FAX according to the information provided on the job via tags and/or data in user profile. You can use them to reproduce problems linked to particular options (such as Landscape for example).

Option	Description
-h on|off	include VSI tags in header
-E std|fine	specify resolution
-o outfile	specify output file (use "-o -" for stdout)
-l length	page length (letter, legal, a4)
-p range	specify page range
-s	scan for embedded keywords
-O landscape	specify landscape mode
-e	pre-process epson file to PCL
-D lvl	debug level
-K	keep temp PCl file
-T	keep temp TIF file
-Z[no]keywords	specify if scan for keywords is active.

Note that VSI-FAX integration with JetPCL is done at a lower level than with Ghostscript and this makes any upgrade impossible without rebuilding the converter itself. So if you isolate a problem within pcltotif, it will likely require Esker Technical Staff and R&D involvement.

Tip

Versions 5.1 and on include a wrapping feature for text documents in order to avoid unwanted cut text and to comply with Outlook client display. However in some cases, this wrapping may be applied to files that you do not want to wrap. This is likely to happen with PCL files being submitted with unspecific extensions (`file.tmp` for example) or redirected on the Standard Input (`cat file.pcl | vfx`). In these configurations, the server could be unable to recognize the file as a PCL and treat it as text hence forcing wrapping. The solution in this case is to slightly alter the way the document is submitted in order to ensure the PCL format is recognized: either by changing the extension (`file.tmp tofile.pcl`) or by adding the file type tag (ftp) to declare the input file is pcl regardless of its extension or by referring to the file within vfx command (`cat file.pcl | vfx` becomes `vfx file.pcl`).

Add-on formatters

On Windows servers, it is possible to enhance VSI-FAX support for Office file types by deploying add-on formatters (doctotif, htmtotif, pdftotif, ppttotif and xlstotif). They are available as a separate installation on the CD-ROM (in server\w32\fmtrs). This setup will install the converters in <VSIFAX>\lbin\viewers and modify the formatters.lst in order for them to be active by default on the following pattern:

```
#pdf:viewers\pdftotif.exe:o:
#rtf:viewers\doctotif.exe:o:
doc:viewers\doctotif.exe:o:
xls:viewers\xlstotif.exe:o:
ppt:viewers\ppttotif.exe:o:
htm:viewers\htmtotif.exe:o:
html:viewers\htmtotif.exe:o:
```

A few notes regarding these default settings:

- Pdftotif is not activated by default because Gstotif is the recommended converter for PDF files and Pdftotif should only be used when Gstotif fails to convert your documents properly.
- Doctotif is only activated for .doc and not .rtf for a similar reason, we consider rtftotif to be the recommended converter. However for complex documents the doctotif converter can give better results.

All these converters offer the same option -o as vfx command to test their output. For example to test doctotif, we can launch from <VSIFAX>\lbin\viewers :

```
> doctotif -o output.tif input.doc
```

If the output is not correct, we need to find out if the problem comes from the viewer not launching properly, the viewer not displaying the document properly, the printing operation failing, the pcl not being generated properly or the pcltotif conversion not giving satisfying results.

- **First step**: the viewer

  By default VSI-FAX services are setup at installation to start with the LocalSystem account. This works fine for normal job processing but can lead to right issues when using add-on formatters (also applies to user-defined or external ones). It is then recommended to edit the service definition and switch from a LocalSystem account to an administrator user on the server. This will help regarding the execution of right issues and will ease troubleshooting because you can login with this account (which is not possible with LocalSystem).

  Once you are logged in to the server with this user account, you can go in <VSIFAX>\lbin\viewers and launch the viewer corresponding to the converter you have a problem with (for example wordview for doctotif). Be aware that some of the viewers require specific Microsoft libraries to run (such as mso97v.dll) which are stored in the <VSIFAX>\lbin\viewers\common folder. During normal execution, the server launches the viewers from this folder so you need to do so too when launching them manually. For example with wordview:

  ```
  In <vsifax>\lbin\viewers\common > ..\wordview\wordview.exe
  ```

  If the viewer doesn't appear, you need to use any error message popping up to track the problem. If the viewer appears properly but the file does not look good, this could be due to the fact that it uses some Word features the viewer doesn't support. In this case, try installing Office on the server and switch to the external formatter (mstotif). If the file looks good in the viewer, the issue may be appearing at a later stage in the process. Go on and check the printing step.
- **Second step**: the printing

  Once you managed to launch the viewer and open the input file, we need to check if the viewer is able to submit the file to "VSIFAX server" printer. First pause the printer and then print to it from the viewer. A job should appear in the print spooler. If this is not the case, we need to check that the printer is declared in the Printers properties for the current windows account then ensure that the current user is allowed to print onto it (domain users for example may not be allowed to access it).

  Once the job is sitting in the spool, open the printer properties and go to the Ports tab. Double-check that current port is VFXSERVER: and open the "Configure port" menu. The work directory should be set to <VSIFAX>\spool\temp and the output pcl filename currentpcl.pcl. If these values were altered, reset them back to default. Finally release the print job and check that currentpcl.pcl is created where it should be.

  Tip

  In previous versions, VSI-FAX port created a sub-folder in a TSE environment corresponding to the printing user name so the pcl file created was <VSIFAX>\spool\temp\<username>\currentpcl.pcl and the

server couldn't find it. A workaround consisted of changing the filename to ..\currentpcl.pcl. This trick is no longer useful in versions 5.1 and on (the original problem was solved) but you may find such settings on migrated platforms.

If the pcl file is incorrect (margin issues for example), try to change the print settings in the viewer and see if this impacts the output. If it is correct, the next step may be the cause of the conversion.

- **Third step**: currentpcl.pcl conversion

  This is the last step in the conversion: the pcl file generated by the printing is submitted to pcltotif in order to be converted to TIF. If you suspect the problem lies here, please refer to PCLTOTIF.

Faxing PDF files

While Ghostscript can be used to image most standard PDF files, consideration must be given to the program that produces the PDF file. There are known problems with some applications, like Crystal Reports, when landscape margins are used. If you encounter problems imaging PDF files (for example, portrait compressed instead of landscape full page), use the PDFTOTIF formatter. To do this:

1. Stop the fax server.
2. Run the VSI-FAX Add-on formatters program (see Setting up add-on formatters for instructions).
3. Install a PDF viewer on your fax server.
4. Edit the `faxserver\lib\formatters.lst` file and un-comment out the line `pdf:viewers\pdftotif.exe::` (i.e. remove the "#" from the beginning of the line).
5. Save your changes to the `formatters.lst` file.
6. Restart the fax server.

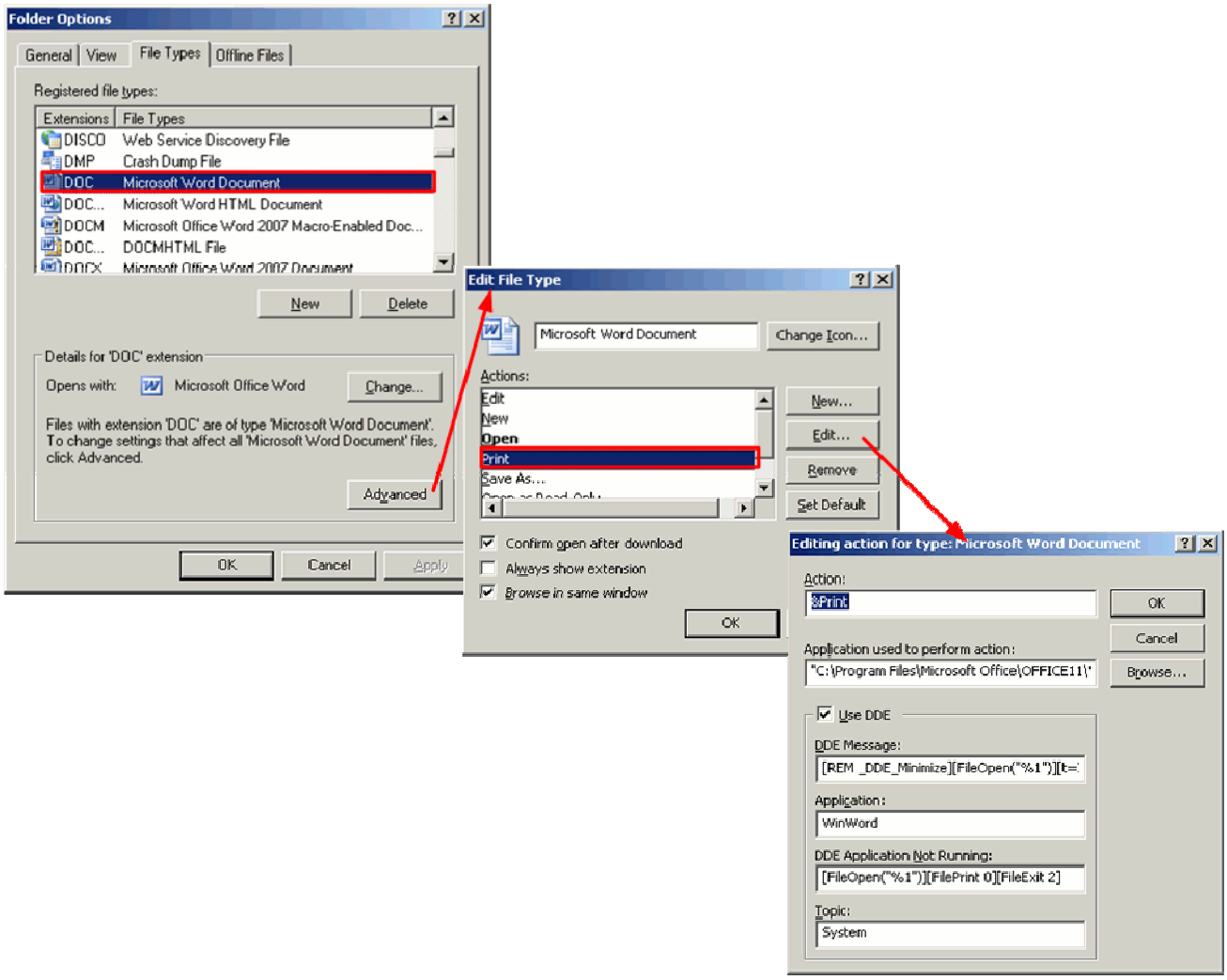
External and User-defined formatters

The purpose of these formatters is to provide VSI-FAX with a generic way to treat virtually any file type by launching an application that will be able to display and print the document on our "VSIFAX server" printer. Their behavior is similar to our add-on formatters' so most of the troubleshooting steps apply here too.

The only thing different being that it is harder to be sure about the application used to print. Any file type that is not declared in the formatters.lst but associated to a program in the OS will be imaged using this very program. To check this association:

1. Open Windows Explorer, and select Tools > Folder Options.
2. In the File Types tab, look for the document type you have trouble with in the Registered file types list.
3. Once you have found it, select it and click on the Advanced button at the bottom of the tab.
4. You can now see detailed information about the command executed for any given action by selecting the action name and clicking Edit.

Click here for a preview of the steps to follow for Word documents.



Tip

You can also check this association by using the command `vinfo -D -v filetypes`.

If the application linked to a file format is not the one you wish to use (for example if Wordpad is associated with rtf but you want to use Word), you can use the Change button on the folder options to override default setting.

Tip

This can also be done automatically by the OS when opening a document with Open with option by ticking the Always use this program to open these files setting.

The VSI-FAX server integrates via the Print command. This command is used to send a document to the default printer. You can manually emulate this behavior by defining the "VSIFAX server" printer as default and right-clicking on your document to choose "print". The server will not be able to image the document if you get any pop-ups here (first time launch message for example). If this is working manually, you can launch a test conversion with the -o option as with vfx.

```
> mstotif -o output.tif input.doc
```

To get details about this conversion you can activate debug traces for Mstotif converter in `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file by creating a section named [MSTOTIF] and add the following lines into it:

```
[MSTOTIF]
 debug = on
 hide-window=off
```

```
dde-only=on
```

This will generate a new log file `mstotifin <vsifax>\spool\logs` containing information related to these conversions. If this appears to be working and the imaging program is launched and closed properly, you can go to Add-on formatters and follow the procedure to confirm the printer setting and the currentpcl.pcl conversion.

Tip

The most frequent message in mstotif log is "Timeout" which happens when the imaging program gets stuck on a pop-up message and cannot complete the printing. The "hide-window=off" option will allow you to see the program on the desktop and detect such problems.

Faxing Microsoft Office files

If you are using an add-on viewer to image Microsoft Office documents and your document is generated from a newer version of a Microsoft Office product, your document may not format properly. In this case, install Microsoft Office on the fax server. Check the `formatters.lst` file for the file type(s) that are not formatting correctly and, if they exist, comment them out by putting a pound sign (#) at the beginning of the line that contains them. After you save your changes to the `formatters.lst` file, you must stop and restart the VSI-FAX server. VSI-FAX will then use the Office products and the MSTOTIF formatter to image the files.

Important

When using MS Office conversions, the VSI-FAX Fax Server service (vrsched.exe) should be running under a user, not under a SYSTEM account.

If using Microsoft Office 2003 SP2 and running vrsched.exe under a SYSTEM account, the Office 2003 program unexpectedly quits with an unrecoverable error (the Mso.dll fails and a DW20.exe component appears in the list of Windows processes from Windows Task Manager that reports the Office 2003's program failure). The workaround is to run the VSI-FAX Fax Server service (i.e. vrsched.exe) under a user.

If when imaging Microsoft Office files like Powerpoint, Word or Excel files you encounter a failure with the add-on viewers as shown below:

```
c:\test\Sample.doc: mstotif: vfxview failed
```

the workaround is also to run the VSI-FAX Fax Server service (i.e. vrsched.exe) under a user, not under a SYSTEM account.

Additional troubleshooting

For more information about troubleshooting formatters, see Formatter errors.

Basic Fax Server Administration

Basic Fax Server Administration

This section describes the basic tools, techniques, and procedures used to administer a VSI-FAX server.

Tools and techniques

This section describes the tools and techniques you can use to administer your VSI-FAX server. Many fax administration tasks can be accomplished more than one way (e.g., from the command or via a graphical administration environment such as the Microsoft Management Console).

Microsoft Management Console (MMC)

VSI-FAX Server Administration is a Microsoft Management Console (MMC) snap-in that allows you to manage your fax server from a common Windows-based Graphical User Interface (GUI).

Before you can use VSI-FAX Server Administration, you must install the software from your VSI-FAX CD-ROM and load the snap-in from a Microsoft Management Console (MMC) session.

See also
Installing VSI-FAX Server Administration MMC snap-in
Refer to the VSI-FAX Server Administration help for additional information about loading the snap-in from an MMC session.

Command line

VSI-FAX administration commands can be entered from any Unix/Linux or Windows command shell. Help for these commands is available by entering the command followed by a question mark argument. For example, to get help for the `vfxadmin license` command, enter:

`vfxadmin license -?` or `vfxadmin license -help`

See also
Refer to *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation for additional information about VSI-FAX commands.

Modifying configuration files

Another way you can perform VSI-FAX administration is by directly modifying one of the various configuration files with a text editor.

See also
Refer to *Configuration Files* in the Reference Addendum documentation for additional information about specific entries in VSI-FAX configuration files.

Starting and stopping the scheduler

Before a fax request can be submitted, the scheduler must be running. Additionally, you must stop the scheduler to perform certain maintenance activities, then restart it to resume normal operation.

Note
To start or stop the scheduler, you must be logged on as root or vsifax on Unix. On Windows, you must be logged in as Administrator or have Administrator privileges.

To start the fax scheduler, enter:

```
vfxsched start
```

A message displays indicating success or failure.

To stop the fax scheduler, enter:

```
vfxsched stop
```

A message displays indicating success or failure.

To stop scheduler and restart it with a single command, enter:

```
vfxsched restart
```

Getting scheduler status

You can also use the `vfxstat` command to return status information from the scheduler. This includes confirmation that the scheduler is running and that a particular device is ready to begin processing fax requests.

When one or more devices have been initialized and the scheduler is waiting to accept fax requests, device states are shown as idle.

To check device status only, enter:

```
vfxstat
```

Although the status of the scheduler is given in the output of almost any option used with `vfxstat`, the `-r` option reports whether the scheduler is running or not.

To check only scheduler status, enter:

```
vfxstat -r
```

A message displays indicating success or failure.

You can also verify that the associated scheduler command processes have been successfully started. You will see at least the following list of processes with the `vfxsched list` command.

To verify that the scheduler is running, enter:

```
vfxsched list
```

Depending on your exact system configuration, you may see additional processes listed. For example, if you set up the email-to-fax gateway during fax server installation, you will also see a `vpopd` process in the list.

To show administrator information (i.e., a complete list of devices, classes, and server information), use the `vfxstat -a` command.

```
vfxstat -a
```

Sending faxes

The simplest `vfx` command uses just two parameters: the `-n` (fax number) option followed by the filename. For example, to fax `my_file.txt` to local fax number 555-1212, enter:

```
vfx -n555-1212 my_file.txt
```

While this very simple fax command line will suffice for very simple applications, generally more control is required. Tags allow you to include more information and precisely control various fax settings. Each tag must begin with the `-t` (tag) option, followed by the tag/value pair. To send the same fax as the previous example using tags, enter:

```
vfx -t tfn=555-1212 -t fll=my_file.txt
```

To send this same fax but also include a classic cover page, enter:

```
vfx -t tfn=555-1212 -t fll=my_file.txt -t cvr=classic
```

Viewing fax requests

A request submitted with `vfx` is queued for a fax device or class. The scheduler manages the request until it is completed, canceled, or until it expires because the maximum number of retry attempts was reached.

You can view the status of all active fax requests with the `vfxstat` command. Status is displayed in the following format:

Job Num	Fax Request ID Number. This unique ID number is used to identify each fax request.
Dest	Displays the assigned fax device or class queue for each fax request.
User	The fax server user ID of the person who submitted the fax request.
Submitted	The time the fax request was submitted in MM/DD HH:MM format. For example: 03/28 16:36.
Scheduled	The scheduled time for the initial or next fax attempt. For example, if a second (retry) attempt is necessary, you will see the next time that fax request is scheduled to be sent.
Att	The number of attempts the fax request has initiated.
Pri	The priority of the fax request: Urgent, High, Medium or Low.
Result	Result status of the latest fax request attempt. If the fax request has made several unsuccessful attempts, it will reflect the result status of the most recent attempt.
Group	When the fax request is part of a Group Broadcast, a number appears in this column. This number is the Group request ID number associated with that fax request. Both the Group request ID number and the fax request ID number are unique for tracking purposes.

To view all fax requests currently in the queue, enter:

```
vfxstat
```

Canceling fax requests

A request can be canceled using the `vfxcancel` command. You will need to know the fax request id number. This can be obtained using the `vfxstat` command.

Note
A fax request can only be canceled by the fax administrator or the user who originally sent the fax.

To cancel a fax request 1004 using the `vfxcancel` command, enter

```
vfxcancel 1004
```

To confirm the `vfxcancel` action using the `vfxstat` command, enter:

```
vfxstat
```

You will notice that fax request 1004 is not listed because it has been canceled.

You can use `vfxcancel` to cancel multiple faxes as well. To cancel requests 1005 and 1009, enter:

```
vfxcancel 1005 1009
```

Configuring the email gateway

For an overview on sending emails with VSI-FAX, refer to Sending email messages.

The email gateway is defined in the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file, under the [VMAIL] section. The two main flags to set are:

- `server` : contains the IP address or fully qualified host name of the SMTP server. Default value is set during installation.
- `sender` : SMTP user name. This is the name that is shown in the fax recipient's email inbox. Default is `VsifaxServer`.

See also

Refer to *Configuration Files* in the Reference Addendum documentation for additional information about how to edit the `vsisrv.ini` configuration file.

If you encounter problems when sending emails, refer to Emails problems.

Configuring the profiles to receive email notifications

The following explains how to configure outbound fax notifications and inbound fax notifications:

- Outbound fax notifications
- Inbound fax notifications

See also

Refer to *Tag Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation for details on the tags to set and how you can set them from the command line, from VSI-FAX Server Administration (MMC), or from from the clients.

Outbound fax notifications

To get an Outbound Fax notification (fax sent successfully or not), you need to set the following tags on the user profile:

To get the email notification **without** the .tif file attached:

- `not` (Send Notify Mode): the type of notification (nty-ok or nty-fail to get a notification in success or failure)
- `mad` (From Email Address): the email address of the user

To get an email notification **with** the .tif file attached:

- `sfx` (Email Copy of Sent Faxes to Sender): notification type (nty-ok or nty-fail to get a notification in success or failure)
- `sfe` (Sent Fax Email Address): the email address of the user

Note

If the "`sfe`" and "`mad`" values are the same, only the notification with the .tif file attached is sent. If the email addresses are different, two emails are sent, one with the .tif file attached and one without the .tif file attached.

Inbound fax notifications

To set up the inbound notification, you first need to verify that the inbound fax is associated with the proper user profile (either according to the DID/DTMF extension or because the device is associated with the user profile).

Then, you need to setup the `aem` and `rfe` tags.

- `aem` (Automatically Email Routed Fax): controls whether or not to automatically email routed faxes
- `rfe` (Routed Fax Email Address): the email address that should receive routed faxes

The `rfm` tag corresponds to the format of the routed fax (can be routed as a .tif file or as a .pdf file).

License management

A network client is any VSI-FAX application running on a computer with a different IP address than the fax server. Each client must be registered as a licensed user in the VSI-FAX database to be able to connect to the fax server.

VSI-FAX licenses specify a maximum number of licensed users. When you have reached this limit and want to register new clients, you have to reactivate the current license with a license that authorizes more users or with an unlimited-user license.

In the same way, VSI-FAX licenses specify a maximum number of licensed ports available for hardware devices (i.e. single-channel modems and fax boards). You cannot use more ports than the number of ports allowed by the license otherwise VSI-FAX Fax Server will stop.

Reactivating VSI-FAX Server license

You can change the VSI-FAX license from the command shell using `vfxadmin license` or from VSI-FAX Server Administration on Windows, for example, to change to a production license after an evaluation period or to increase the number of licensed users, ports or virtual fax servers.

When you reactivate the VSI-FAX license, you need two pieces of information: Serial Number and Activation Key. Both pieces of information are provided when you buy licenses from Esker or an Esker strategic partner.

Command line

1. Log into the fax server as user vsifax.
2. Reactivate the current license by entering the following:

   ```
   vfxadmin license
   ```

   You will be prompted for the new serial number and activation key, as well as the virtual servers' IP addresses if the license includes Virtual Fax Servers. Once installed, the license table is updated with the number of users specified by the new license activation key.

Troubleshooting licensing problems due to the number of devices used

When changing licenses, (ex. when going from a VSI-FAX evaluation license to a production license) you must ensure that you are not using more ports for hardware devices than the number of ports authorized by the new license.

For example, you are using 28 ports on a VSI-FAX Server running with an evaluation license authorizing an unlimited number of ports and you purchase a production license authorizing only 24 ports.

In such cases, you must delete the devices you no longer want to use before entering the new license so as not to exceed the number of ports allowed by the new license.

If you do not delete any devices, VSI-FAX Fax Server will stop when you enter the new license and you will not be able to start it again until you have deleted devices.

On Windows, when trying to restart the VSI-FAX Fax Server service from the Windows Services panel, you get the following error message:

```
Windows could not start the VSI-FAX Fax Server on Local Computer. For more
information, review the System Event Log. If this is a non-Microsoft service, contact
the service vendor, and refer to service-specific error code 1.
```

The error message written in the VSI-FAX Fax Server logs is as follows:

```
30 devices exceed license max of 10
Please install a valid license or delete exceeding devices exiting
```

To solve this problem, you must delete some devices from the system. Note that only hardware devices (i.e. single-channel modems and fax boards) are licensed. Deleting a loopback (lb), a sendmail (sm), or a Fax on Demand Connector (FoDC) device will not decrease the license count.

See also

To learn how to delete devices, refer to Adding and removing devices.

Displaying license information

Command line

1. Log into the fax server as user vsifax.
2. Display the settings of the current license by entering the following:

   ```
   vfxadmin license -l
   ```

   This displays the license table with the following information: the serial number and the activation key, the license type (real, date, demo or eval), the platforms the license is compatible with (none for all platforms, linux for Linux platforms and intel for Linux and Windows), the maximum number of licensed users, of ports used and of virtual fax servers configured, the license expiration date if any, and the version number.

User administration

You must register each user who will be sending or receiving faxes with VSI-FAX as a licensed user in the VSI-FAX database. The VSI-FAX license installed must allow enough licensed users otherwise you have to reactivate license to increase the number of licensed users.

Registering users

When a user is registered on the fax server, an account for that user is created in the user database, which is located in the `$VSIFAX/spool/dbs` directory. Every individual who uses VSI-FAX to send or receive faxes must be registered on the fax server, and each user must have a unique VSI-FAX user ID. The VSI-FAX user ID does not have to be the same as any other login name used by that individual.

Note
Administrators do not have to explicitly register new VSI-FAX users because new users are automatically registered the first time they connect to the fax server. Outlook and web fax client users are also licensed the first time they connect to the fax server.

Command line

For example, to register fax user Bill Franks with the user ID billf, enter:

```
vfxadmin user -n "Bill Franks" billf
```

The `vfxadmin user` command can also used to register and license a user at the same time. For example, to register and license user Bill Franks (user ID billf), enter:

```
vfxadmin user -L -n "Bill Franks" billf
```

Changing a user's name and password

A user's VSI-FAX logon information is stored in the fax server user database. Two different command line utilities can be used to change a user's name or password:

- Use `vreguser` if you want to change your name or password.
- Use `vfxadmin user` if you are a fax administrator and want to change another user's name or password.

Command line

If user billf wants to change his user name from Bill Franks to William Franks, he would enter:

```
vreguser -n "William Franks"
```

If the fax administrator wants to change user billf's name from Bill Franks to William Franks, he would enter:

```
vfxadmin user -n "William Franks" billf
```

If user billf wants to change his password, he would enter:

```
vreguser -p
```

The system will prompt user billf to enter his new password.

If the fax administrator wants to change user billf's password, he would enter:

```
vfxadmin user -p billf
```

The system will prompt the fax administrator to enter billf's new password.

Deleting a user

To delete user ID billf, enter:

```
vfxadmin user -x billf
```

Displaying a list of registered and licensed users

To display a list of registered and licensed users, use the command:

```
vfxadmin user -l
```

Assigning a DID or DTMF extension to a user

A Direct Inward Dial (DID) or a Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) extension can be used to route inbound faxes. Fax routing allows each user to have his or her own unique fax number so that faxes can be routed directly to their personal email inbox.

A fax routed to an email inbox arrives as a formatted TIFF attachment to an email message. TIFF files can be opened and viewed with any common imaging editing or viewing software.

Command line

To assign a user's DID or DTMF extension, enter:

```
vfxadmin user -e <ext> <user>
```

Device administration

Devices are either single-channel modems or Fax boards, which usually provide several output channels on a single board.

Note
After making modifications on a device like customizing the fax page header, you must restart the scheduler for the new configuration to be taken into account.

Adding and removing devices

For a physical fax device to send fax requests, it must be added to the system, set to accept requests, and enabled. Before incoming faxes can be received, receive capability must also be set and it must be enabled. Typically, a device only needs to be added to the system once.

Notes
You must be logged in as root or user vsifax to add or remove devices.
When a device is added to the system, it is set to "enabled" and "accepting" for both send and receive requests by default.

Before you add or remove a device, you must stop the fax scheduler. After adding or removing a device, you must restart the scheduler in order for these changes to take affect.

If you add or remove devices while the scheduler is running, you will be warned that the changes will not take effect until the scheduler is restarted.

Command line for adding a device

To add a device, you must use the `vfxadmin device` command:

```
vfxadmin device -a -i <FIM name> -v <tty device> -n "<comment>" <device name>
```

For example to add a Class 2 modem device named `fax2`, in Linux/Unix, enter:

```
vfxadmin device -a -i cx -v /dev/tty01 -n "This is a modem" fax2
```

In Windows, the command would be:

```
vfxadmin device -a -i cx -v com1 -n "This is a modem" fax2
```

Note
If you want the added device to be the default destination, add the `-d` option to the `vfxadmin device` command.

At the time a device is added, you must specify the serial port name. Additional options that can be used include:

- Status (enabled, sending, receiving, accepting)
- Receive notify procedure
- Speaker mode

Once the device is configured, you can use `vfxadmin device` to list the device information. To list the parameters for a device fax2, enter:

```
vfxadmin device -l fax2
```

You can verify that the device has been added by entering:

```
vfxstat -t
```

Important
Before removing a device, be sure that no requests are scheduled for it. You have to cancel or modify existing requests before removing the device.

To remove a device, enter:

```
vfxadmin device -x fax2
```

You can use the`vfxstat -t` command to verify that fax2 has been successfully removed by entering:

```
vfxstat -t
```

Setting a device to receive or not receive incoming faxes

By default, all fax devices are configured to answer incoming calls and therefore receive incoming faxes. You may want to selectively turn this feature on and off so that some of your fax devices are configured as send-only or receive-only.

To configure a device fax1 to not answer incoming calls and therefore not to receive incoming faxes, enter:

```
vfxadmin norecv fax1

Device fax1 now not receiving
```

To configure device fax1 to receive incoming faxes, enter:

```
vfxadmin recv fax1

Device fax1 now receiving
```

Setting a modem or Brooktrout board to detect DTMF

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency DTMF detection is supported for c2 modem FIMs (i.e. Class 2/2.0 fax modems) and for `bm` FIMs (i.e. Dialogic Brooktrout TR1034 board). It is disabled by default. You can enable it by editing the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file.

- To turn on DTMF detection for modems, set the `enable-did` parameter to ON in the [DEVICE] section of vsisrv.ini file.
- To turn on DTMF detection for Brooktrout fax boards, set the `dtmf-enable` parameter to ON in the [DEVICE] section of vsisrv.ini file. Three other parameters are available to configure DTMF detection on Brooktrout boards:

`DTMF-digit-limit` is used to set the maximum number of DTMF digits to detect,

`DTMF-interdigit-timeout` is used to set the time to wait between two digits,

`DTMF-max-collect-time` is used to set the time to wait for DTMF events.

See also
For details on these parameters, refer to *Configuration Files* in the Reference Addendum documentation.

Classes

VSI-FAX can use either a single physical device or a group of devices called a class. For example, a class could be a group of devices dedicated to long distance calls, or a group of devices used only for high-volume fax requests. A class can only contain physical devices; classes cannot contain other classes. However, any device can be included in one or more classes.

When a fax is sent to a class, the fax will be routed to the first available modem.

Note
You must be logged in as root (Unix/Linux), Administrator (Windows), or user vsifax to change device or class parameters.

Tip
Assign each existing device to a class, then use the class name as the default destination when sending a fax from a program or script. This will allow you to add devices to this class in the future without having to rewrite your program or script. Any new devices will be immediately available to service fax requests as soon as you add it to the existing class.

Creating a new class

Note
You must be logged on as root (Unix/Linux), Administrator (Windows), or user vsifax to create a class. When creating a class, you must restart the scheduler before the change will take effect.

Command line

A class is created when the first device is added to it with the `vfxadmin class` command. Use the same command to add new devices to the class.

For example, to create a new class called sales and assign the fax1 device to it, enter:

vfxadmin class -a fax1 sales

The sales class is created, and the device fax1 is added to it.

Note
If the created class is not the default destination, you must specify it on the command line whenever you want to use it.

To confirm that the new class was properly created, enter:

```
vfxstat -t
```

Removing a device from a class

Note
If a class has no device assigned to it, it is automatically removed from the database.

Command line

To remove device fax1 from class sales, enter:

```
vfxadmin class -r fax1 sales
```

To confirm that the device was successfully deleted, enter:

```
vfxstat -t
```

A message then displays confirming the device was successfully deleted.

Enabling and disabling devices and classes

Enabling or disabling a device is a very high-level decision. When you disable a device, you are essentially taking it offline; it cannot send or receive any fax submissions until you re-enable it. This may be required if a phone line is out of service or is needed for a purpose other than faxing.

If the device is accepting requests but is disabled, a request can be submitted and queued, but it will not be sent until the device or class is re-enabled. You do not have to stop and restart the scheduler for the enable or disable command to take effect.

Command line

To enable a device, enter:

```
vfxadmin enable <device>
```

You can confirm that the change has taken effect with the `vfxstat -t` command. If the device has been enabled, the `vfxstat -a` output will show yes in the Ena column and Idle in the State column.

To disable a device, enter:

```
vfxadmin disable <device>
```

You can confirm that the change has taken effect with the `vfxstat -t` command. If the device has been disabled, the `vfxstat -t` output will show dwn in the Ena column and Not Running in the State columns that correspond to the newly disabled device.

Accepting and rejecting fax requests

Setting a device or class to accept or reject fax jobs is a way to fine-tune device operation.

Important
You must be logged on as root (Unix/Linux), Administrator (Windows), or user vsifax to change accept status.
When a device or class is added to the system, by default its status is accepting.
When changing a device or class accept status, you are not required to stop and restart the scheduler for the command to take effect.

To set device fax2 to accept requests, enter:

```
vfxadmin accept fax2
```

To verify that fax2 is accepting, enter:

```
vfxstat -t
```

The`vfxadmin reject` command is used to set a fax modem so it will reject outgoing fax requests but accept incoming faxes. When changing reject status, you are not required to stop and restart the scheduler for the command to take effect.

To reject fax requests (where the `-r` option specifies a reason), enter:

```
vfxadmin reject -r "inbound only" fax2
```

The `-r` option allows you to specify a reason the device is rejecting requests. A device that is not accepting requests does not allow a fax request to be queued.

To verify that the device is rejecting requests, enter:

```
vfxstat -a
```

System parameters

System parameters allow you to configure SMTP and POP3 connectivity as well as define global default settings for any new devices added to your system.

Configuration file

System parameters are stored in the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file.

Company information

Company information provides a simple way to customize the default fax cover page templates so that your company or organization's name and address information automatically appears on your faxes.

Configuration file

Company information is stored in the `USERINFO` section of the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file.

Server side archiving of sent jobs

To turn on server side archiving of fax jobs, set the flags in each users profile. The flags to set are `sar` and `arc`.

- The `sar` flag cannot be set at the time a job is submitted, it can only be set on users, and it does not allow resubmitting the archived faxes. It allows performing administrator-oriented archive.
- The `arc` tag can be set when a job is submitted. The `vfx ... -t arc="true"`command allows archiving the sent fax on the VSI-FAX server and access it from VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client. The fax can then be modified and resubmitted either from VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client or by issuing a `vfxtry` command.

To set the `sar` and `arc` tags on users profiles, the administrator can issue the command:

```
vfxadmin user -t arc=yes -t sar=yes <username>
```

on the fax server. They can also be set using the VSI-FAX Server Administration.

See also
For more details on the `sar` and `arc` tags, refer to *Tag Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation.

Historical Logs

Historical Logs

Historical logs store detailed information about inbound and outbound faxes.

Important
The exact order of historical log tags is subject to change from release to release. Therefore, if you will be evaluating historical logs via a script, it is best that you explicitly search for a particular tag name rather than use a tag's current position in the log file. This will ensure that your scripts continue to work after product upgrades.

Outbound historical logs

Information about how outbound faxes were scheduled, sent and re-sent is stored in the ologgrp (for a group of recipients), ologreg (for single recipient), and ologatt (fax attempts) databases. You can view this information using the `vfxolog` command line utility or the VSI-FAX Server Administration plug-in.

If you use the `vfxolog` command line utility, the following information is displayed for each outbound fax:

Req-id	Unique fax request ID number.
Submitted	Actual transmission time displays in MM/DD HH:MM format. For example: 03/28 16:17
npg/nps	Number of pages in the fax (`npg`) and number of pages re-sent (`nps`). Normally, these two numbers should be the same, indicating that all pages were successfully sent the first time. However, if a problem occurred during transmission, VSI-FAX will automatically re-send the affected pages.
Clientid	VSI-FAX user who submitted the fax request.
Phone number	Destination fax number.
Attmpt	Fax attempt status code. This is real-time status for the current fax attempt. Once the fax has been successfully sent, this entry is blank. Entries will be one of the fax attempt status codes. Refer to *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation for additional information.
Result	Final fax request status. Entries will be one of the fax request status codes. Refer to *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation for additional information.
att	Attempt number. The total number of attempts to send each fax request is controlled by the retry strategy See Retry Strategies. An asterisk after the number indicates that this fax request is complete.

Tip
`vfxolog` typically only displays historical information for your outbound faxes. To view historical information for **all** outbound faxes, log in as a user with fax administration privileges (e.g., user vsifax), then enter your `vfxolog` command.

Inbound historical logs

Historical information about received (inbound) faxes is stored in the ilog database. You can view this information using the `vfxilog` command line utility or the VSI-FAX Server Administration plug-in.

See also
For more information, refer to Microsoft Management Console (MMC).

If you use the `vfxilog` command line utility, the following information is displayed for each received fax:

Req ID	Unique fax request ID number.
Orig ID	The original ID number for this fax if it was routed from another user.
Clientid	The current owner of this fax. Unless you have administrative privileges, you will only see your faxes.
From	the TSI string of the sender, if it is a received fax, or the name of the person who routed it, if it is a routed fax.
Route time	The time the fax was received or routed.
pgs	The number of pages in the fax.
src	■ The source of this fax: ■ rcv means the fax was received ■ rte means the fax was routed
del	■ If the fax has been deleted, the reason the fax was deleted: ■ adl is auto delete ■ req is user request ■ fwd means the fax was forwarded ■ rnp means user RNP deleted it
DID	Display the Direct Inward Dial (DID) number for the fax.

Retry Strategies

Retry Strategies

Retry strategies are an important tool for managing the fax load on your server. A retry strategy defines the number of times the fax server will try to re-send a fax and how long it will wait between each retry before the fax request is permanently removed from the active fax queue.

When you send a fax, the retry strategy used for that fax request is either the default retry strategy or another predefined retry strategy you explicitly assign to that fax request when you create the fax request or via your user profile.

Basic retry strategies

VSI-FAX provides several basic retry strategies that are optimized for common fax scenarios (e.g., local faxing, international faxing, etc.). You can also define custom retry strategies to meet your particular needs. This is accomplished by manually editing the `$VSIFAX/lib/retrys.lst` file.

The default `retrys.lst` file, installed with your VSI-FAX server, defines the following basic retry strategies:

```
default:5,5,5,5
three-attempts:5,5
four-attempts:5,5,5
international:5,5,10,10,60,60,120
```

- The first retry strategy (default), is used whenever no retry strategy is explicitly specified. This retry strategy defines four retries, five minutes apart.
- The three-attempts retry strategy defines two retries, five minutes apart. Notice that although this retry strategy is named three-attempts that it contains only two entries. This is because these two retries, combined with the initial send, constitutes three total attempts.
- The four-attempts retry strategy is nearly identical to the three-attempts strategy except that an additional retry is added for a total of four send attempts (i.e., the initial send and three retries) five minutes apart.
- The international retry strategy is much more complex because successfully sending an international fax is much more susceptible to failure. Notice that it defines seven total retries and that the intervals between the retries gradually increase.
    - The assumption is that if the fax cannot be sent within the first 15 minutes (initial send and two retries, five minutes apart) that there may be a problem with the international phone lines.
    - The next two retries are ten minutes apart. If the fax server gets this far into the international retry strategy a total of 35 minutes has elapsed (15 minutes for the initial send and first two retries and 20 minutes for the third and fourth retries). At this point, it makes sense to let even more time elapse before the fax server retries this fax.
    - The next two retries are an hour (60 minutes) apart. The final retry is two hours from the previous retry. At this point, the fax server has tried to send the fax a total of eight times in four hours and 35 minutes.

Custom retry strategies

If you find that the basic retry strategies do not meet all your needs, you can easily define new retry strategies by manually editing the `$VSIFAX/lib/retrys.lst` file.

Each retry strategy is defined on a separate line. The format of a retry strategy entry is:

```
name>:<minutes>,<minutes>, ...
```

Where <name > is a user-defined name for this strategy, and each <minutes> entry is one retry. The actual number of minutes specified determines how long the fax server will wait before executing that retry.

Note
If a retry strategy is defined without any <minutes> entries, the fax server will interpret it as no retries (i.e., initial send only).

Examples

To define a retry strategy called 24-hours that will re-send a fax nine times during a twenty-four period with successively longer wait times, enter:

```
24-hours:5,10,15,30,60,120,120,360,720
```

To define a retry strategy with no re-sends (i.e., initial send only), enter:

```
no-retries:
```

Fax Routing

Fax Routing

There are three methods for routing received fax transmissions.

- Print received faxes on a centrally located printer and manually hand deliver them to the recipients
- Automatically or manually route received faxes to each user's fax box directory
- Automatically or manually route received faxes to email addresses

Note
By default, received faxes are routed to the VSI-FAX administrator's fax queue, `$VSIFAX/faxq/vsifax`.

Specifying a fax box

A received fax is always placed in a fax box, which is either the default fax box for that device or class, or a user fax box specified by Direct Inward Dial (DID) or Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) routing. If a fax box is not specified for a device, `vsifax` is the default fax box.

See also
For more information on fax routing, refer to Routing received faxes.
To learn how to assign a DID or DTMF extension to a user, refer to Assigning a DID or DTMF extension to a user.
To learn how to turn on DTMF detection for modems or fax boards, refer to Setting a modem or Brooktrout board to detect DTMF.

Command line

The `vfxadmin device` command is used to specify a fax box for a device.

To assign a fax box to a fax device, enter:

```
vfxadmin device -u -b <user> device
```

For example, to assign device fax2 to store its received faxes in the sales fax box enter:

```
vfxadmin device -u -b sales fax2
```

To assign a fax box called legal to a fax device called fax1, so that any faxes received on fax1 will automatically be routed to legal, enter:

```
vfxadmin device -u -b legal fax1
```

Note
The previous example assumes that the legal fax box has been previously created and that fax1 is a valid device.

Departmental routing

Often, faxes need to be routed for an entire department rather than for an individual user. To do this, you must create a department in the fax server user database.

Command line

To create a department for general fax distribution, enter:

```
vfxadmin user -d -n "<descriptive_name>" <dept_name>
```

For example, to create a department called custs for general fax distribution, with the descriptive name Customer Service, enter:

```
vfxadmin user -d -n "Customer Service" custs
```

Note

If you omit the `-L` option from the `vfxadmin user` command, the department will not be licensed.

After adding to the user database you can confirm the addition by entering:

```
vfxadmin user -l
```

Dial String Conversion

Dial String Conversion

"What you see is what you get" is rarely true for telephone numbers. Almost without thinking we include dashes, spaces and parentheses in typed and written telephone numbers. When we manually dial a telephone number, however, we know that we must remove these extra characters.

When entering a fax telephone number into a VSI-FAX client program, users will often use unneeded characters such as dashes, leave out characters that may be required to access long distance or an outside line, etc. Because of this, the VSI-FAX software must analyze each fax request to determine the exact telephone number the modem needs to dial. The process of analyzing and modifying an entered telephone number by VSI-FAX is called dial string conversion.

Dial string conversion is performed by the FIM. Using information in the `vsisrv.ini` file and the `dialcvt.lst` file, or an optional user-defined conversion program, the dial string conversion process evaluates the dial string. Then based on whether it is internal, local, long distance, or international, it determines whether extraneous characters exist, decides whether long-distance carrier access code should be used, and adds or subtracts characters as needed. This section explains what dial string conversion options are available in VSI-FAX and how to use each option.

Preliminary dial string conversion

If VSI-FAX is interfaced with another application program that performs the dial string conversion, you can disable the VSI-FAX dial string conversion function by setting DialConvert to off in the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file. However, steps 2 through 4 will be performed on all dial strings, even if DialConvert is set to off in the vsisrv.ini file.

If the DialcvtProgram entry in the vsisrv.ini file is set to a program name, the dial string conversion will be performed by that program. None of the other dial string conversions described here will take place. If the DialcvtProgram entry is blank, the following dial string conversion will be performed:

1. Any dial string that contains an @ followed by an Internet domain name will be passed to the SendMail FIM and be sent by email.
2. All dashes, spaces, periods and left and right parentheses are removed from the dial string.
3. Any dial string that begins with # will be stripped of the leading # but will not be processed any further by the dial string conversion function.
4. Any characters following an @ character will be processed as a post dial string. When a post dial string is encountered, the modem will wait for five seconds of silence before dialing the characters. Note that this does not affect an email address, which will have been passed to the SendMail FIM and will therefore not reach this stage of processing.
5. Any characters following a comma, @, W, or ! will be treated as a separate dial sequence. (As in step 4 above, email addresses are not affected.)
6. Any characters contained within square brackets [ ] will be considered to be a credit card number. No conversion will be performed on these characters and they will not be used by the dial string conversion function to categorize the call as internal, international, etc. The brackets, however, will be removed.
7. If the dial string begins with the value of the `IntlAccess` entry (international access code) in the `vsisrv.ini` file, no further dial string conversion will be performed.

Intermediate dial string conversion

The next part of dial string conversion involves categorizing it as internal, local, long distance, or international based on the dial string variables stored in the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file.

Note
By default, the dial string variables are set to normal U.S. telephone requirements. If your local telephone system does not follow U.S. standards, reset these values.

Dial string variables are stored in the `DEVICE` section of the `vsisrv.ini`. server configuration file. The fax administrator should determine the appropriate settings for the dial string variables and edit the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file in the `$VSIFAX/lib` directory, as needed.

The dial string variables in the `vsisrv.ini` file are:

Entry	Default	Description
area-code		Area code for the phone line used by this device.
country-code	`1`	The country code for the phone line used by this device.
dial-convert	`ON`	Set `OFF` to disable any dial string conversion.
dial-cvt-program		The name of an external program that will output to standard output the results of its conversion. Its output is used to create the converted dial string. This program is called with the following arguments: `-p <prefix>` Dial `<prefix>`, if defined. `-s <suffix>` Dial `<suffix>`, if defined. `-a <code>` Area `<code>`, if defined. `<number>` Dial string to convert.
dial-prefix		A prefix, such as "9", or "8," to be prepended to a dial string before sending. This is usually used to access outside lines.
dial-suffix		Suffix appended to a dial string before sending.
intl-access	`011`	The dial prefix needed to make international calls.
intl-prefix		An alternate prefix (instead of `LongDistPrefix`) for dialing an international call.
intl-suffix		An alternate suffix for dialing an international call.
local-num-len	`7`	The number of digits in the local number for the phone line used by this device.
long-dist-access	`1`	Dial string needed to make long distance calls.
long-dist-prefix		Prefix prepended to a dial string (instead of `DialPrefix`) if the number is determined to be a long distance number. This is usually used for phone systems that use access codes for long distance calls.
long-dist-suffix		Suffix appended to a dial string (but before `DialSuffix`) if the number is determined to be a long distance number. This is usually used for phone systems that use account numbers for toll calls.

Assuming that D is the number of digits in the dial string, the following logic is used to determine whether it represents an internal, local, long distance, or international number:

If `D < LocalNumLen`, then the dial string is an internal telephone extension.

If `D = LocalNumLen`, then the dial string is a local telephone number.

If `LocalNumLen < D < LocalNumLen + AreaCode`, then the dial string is a long distance telephone number.

If `LocalNumLen + AreaCode < D`, then the dial string is an international telephone number, except if the dial string is in a long distance access format.

Once it is determined which type of telephone number the dial string represents, dial string variables are prepended or appended to the dial string as shown on this chart.

Long Dist Prefix	Dial Prefix	Intl Prefix	Intl Access	LongDist Access	Dial String	Dial Suffix	Intl Suffix	Long Dist Suffix
					Intl.			
	X				Loc.	X		
X				X	Non-Loc.			X
		X	X		Intl.		X	

For example, if the dial string is determined to be a long distance number, the dial string conversion function will prepend the values of `LongDistPrefix` and `LongDistAccess` to it and append the value of `LongDistSuffix` to it.

Final dial string conversion

In addition to the dial string conversion described so far in the section, supplementary dial string conversion can be performed by using the `dialcvt.lst` file. The purpose of the `dialcvt.lst` file is to accommodate the dynamic telephone service standards being supplied by providers in theUnited States. Although these additional dial string conversion features were developed to meet the needs of VSI-FAX users in the United States and the different levels of phone service available from providers in different U.S. states, they may also be appropriate for use by any users in similar environments.

Use of the `dialcvt.lst` file is optional. As installed, the `dialcvt.lst` file is located in the `$VSIFAX/lib` directory. It contains sample entries that have been commented out and are therefore not active. To make use of the special dial string conversion features that can be implemented with the `dialcvt.lst` file, edit this ASCII file with a standard text editor.

Legacy dial string conversion

In versions of VSI-FAX before version 5.1, there was a custom dialstring conversion file, `dialcode.lst`, located in the `$VSIFAX/lib` directory. It is still supported in the current version of VSI-FAX, although the conversion settings in this file will be ignored if there are any settings in the new `dialcvt.lst` file.

If you plan to convert your dialstring converstion settings from the old `dialcode.lst` file to the new `dialcvt.lst` dialstring conversion file, please note that use of an externally-supplied conversion routine and the ability to specify whether to exit the routine immediately upon a match are not supported in the new conversion method.

Testing your dial string conversion

Esker provides a dial string conversion testing program called `vdialcvt`. You can use this program to test your dial string conversion setup and determine whether it is correct.

Once you have configured the variables in `vsisrv.ini` to perform the desired dial string conversion, test the conversion of several sample dial strings with `vdialcvt`.

Note

Your exact and complete dial string conversion setup is emulated by `vdialcvt`, including both the `vsisrv.ini` settings and any entries in the `dialcvt.lst` file. If DialConvert is set to off in the vsisrv.ini file, any dial strings input to vdialcvt will remain unconverted. If DialcvtProgram is set to a custom program name in the `vsisrv.ini` file, `vdialcvt` will run that program.

Custom dial string conversion

All dial string conversion can be disabled by setting the `DialConvert` option `off` in the `vsisrv.ini` file.

If you prefer not to convert dial strings with any of the functions provided with the VSI-FAX software, you can write your own dial string conversion program. If `DialcvtProgram` is set to this program name in the `vsisrv.ini` file, the dial string conversion function, provided by VSI-FAX, will be completely disabled.

Individual users can specify a prefix and suffix that will be used in the conversion of any dial strings in any fax request from that user. This prefix and suffix can be used for user-specific information such a credit card number or account number. The individual prefix and suffix can be set either through one of the VSI-FAX user interface programs or by editing the user's `vsifax.ini` file, located in the user's `$HOME/.vsifax` directory on the fax server.

These are sample entries in the `vsifax.ini` file, specifying individual Prefix and Suffix settings:

```
[SENDPARAMS]
Prefix=
Suff ix=1234
```

Event Notify Procedures

Event Notify Procedures

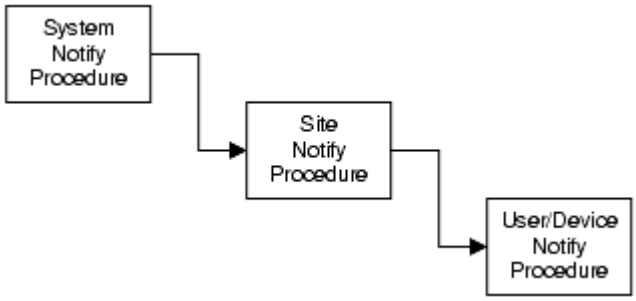
Event notify procedures are an advanced VSI-FAX customization/integration topic. You may skip this section if you are not interested in customizing event notifications.

Event notify procedures are scripts that trigger various system actions whenever certain events take place. This entire notification mechanism is designed to be open and easily customized so that you can optimize each VSI-FAX system to your particular needs.

This section begins with a general functional overview of event notify procedures. Flow diagrams show the various notification points in the system and the various notify procedures run at each of these points. Immediately following the functional overview is detailed information about how to write your own custom notify procedures.

Functional overview

At each different notification point in the system, VSI-FAX executes a hierarchy of notify procedures as shown in this figure:



System notify procedures

System notify procedures are always performed first and automatically. Furthermore, although these scripts are found in the VSI-FAX directory structure, they are not intended to be modified. If you do modify these system notify scripts, you will lose your modifications the next time you upgrade your VSI-FAX system.

Site notify procedures

If they exist, site notify procedures are performed after system notify procedures but before any user or device notify procedures. Site notify procedures are used to customize a particular notification point on a site-wide basis.

Site notify procedures are not supplied with the default VSI-FAX system-you must create them if you want to use them, preventing unnecessary processing by the fax server.

See also
Refer to Custom notify procedures for additional information.

User and device notify procedures

If they exist, user and device notify procedures provide an additional level of granularity and power. Instead of being limited to customizing a particular notification point for an entire site, you can also customize it on a user-by-user or device-by-device basis for sent and received faxes, respectively.

As with site notify procedures, user and device are not supplied with the default VSI-FAX system-you must create them if you want to use them.

See also
Refer to Custom notify procedures for additional information.

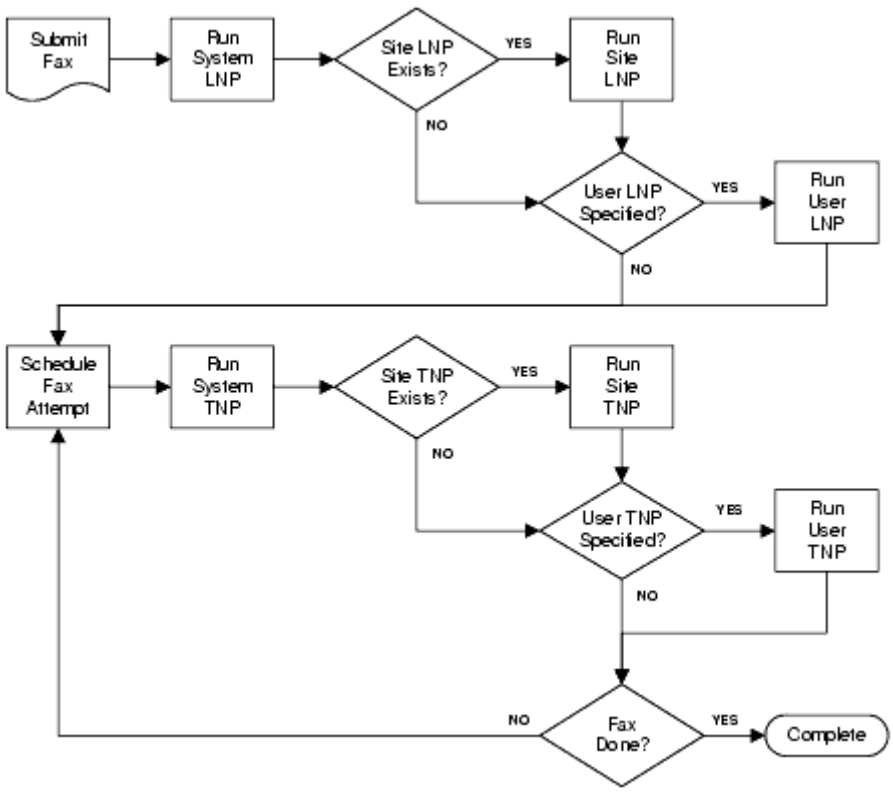
Send notification

The send notification mechanism is specialized for two basic scenarios:

- Normal (non-group) faxing
- Group faxing

This specialization is required because each group fax is split up into individual fax requests by the scheduler, one fax request for each recipient in the group. Normal (non-group) faxes use a single fax request for the entire fax job.

This figure shows the notification mechanism for normal sent faxes:



Launch notify procedures (LNPs)

Immediately after a fax is submitted to the system, one or more Launch Notify Procedures (LNPs) are run. LNPs run before the fax is sent to the scheduler (before any fax attempts are initiated).

Notice that this area of the diagram illustrates the hierarchical behavior that is typical of all notify points in the system:

- The system LNP is always run without decision (automatically).

- Next, the system looks for a site LNP. If it finds one, it runs it.
- Similarly, the system checks the fax command for a user LNP. If a user LNP was specified, the system runs it.

Note
User LNPs must be specified on a fax-by-fax basis. This is typically done via the `-t lnp=<LNP_file>` tag. Similar `vfx` tags are also provided for other user notify procedures.

See also
Refer to *Tag Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation for additional information about using `vfx` tags to run user notify procedures.

The LNP notification point is the same for both normal (non-group) and group faxes.

Transmit notify procedures (TNPs)

Transmit Notify Procedures (TNPs) are typically only run for normal (non-group) faxes. As the Normal (Non-Group) Send Notification Flow Diagram shows, they are run after each fax attempt until the fax job is done. Again, note the hierarchical behavior: the system TNP is automatically run and if the system finds site or user TNPs, it runs them in that order.

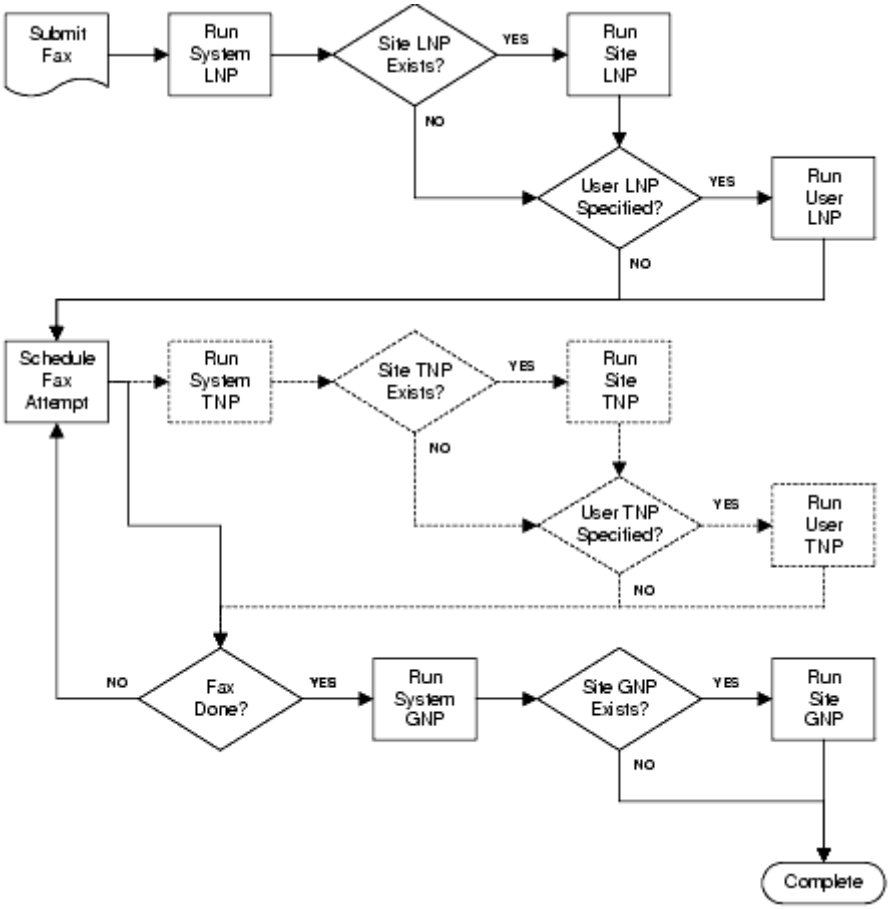
Look at the final decision block, Fax Done? This can mean one of two things:

- The fax was successfully sent.
- The maximum number of retries was attempted but the fax was not successfully sent.

Notice also that if the fax job is not done, that it returns to the scheduler for a retry. This loop continues until the fax is successfully sent or until the maximum number of retries has been attempted (regardless of outcome).

For this reason, most site and user TNPs contain logic that generates one response for a successful fax attempt (i.e., fax job completes successfully), another response for an unsuccessful fax attempt and yet another response for a fax job completing unsuccessfully.

This figure shows the notification mechanism for group sent faxes:



The first part of this flow diagram is identical to the normal (non-group) fax send flow diagram. Immediately after a fax is submitted to the system, the system LNP is automatically run and if the system finds site or user LNPs, it runs them in that order.

When a group fax reaches the Schedule Fax Attempt block, it is split into individual fax requests, one for each recipient in the group. From this point forward, the notification mechanism for group faxes is different than the mechanism for normal (non-group) faxes. The criterion for the Fax Done decision block is whether or not every fax in the group fax job has either reached the maximum number of retries or been successfully sent.

Notice that the TNP blocks are shown in dashed lines. This is because the default behavior is to not run TNPs against group fax jobs. The reason for this is that most TNPs email status for all failed fax attempts and a large group job could generate lots of email. However, you can configure your fax server to run TNPs against group fax jobs by adding the following setting to the `VFXSCHED` section of the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file:

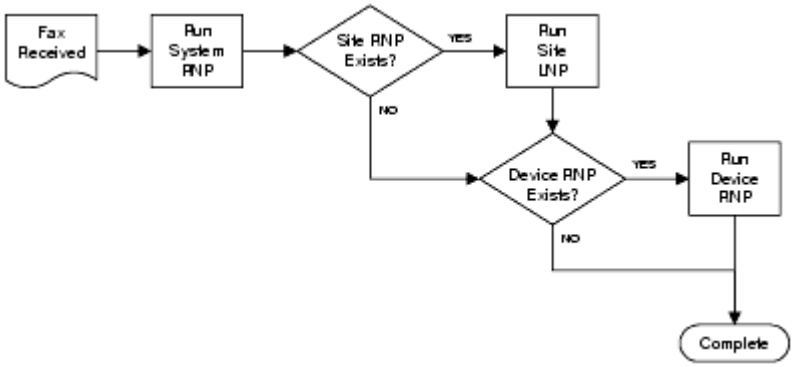
```
group-tnp = YES
```

Group notify procedures (GNPs)

Group Notify Procedures (GNPs) are only run once after the entire fax job is done (not after each fax attempt). In other words, this notification point can only provide notification for the entire group fax job (successful or unsuccessful), it cannot provide notification of each individual fax attempt.

Receive notification

This figure shows the notification mechanism for received faxes:



As you can see from the flow diagram, the receive notification mechanism is much simpler than either of the send notification mechanisms. The receive notification mechanism features a single notification point and is not iterative.

Note
When a fax is routed to a user, any RNP specified in that user's profile will be run.

Immediately after a fax is received by the system, the system Receive Notify Procedures (RNP) is automatically run and if the system finds site or device RNPs, it runs them in that order.

Receive notify procedures (RNPs)

Receive Notify Procedures (RNPs) are very similar to other notify procedures. The primary difference is that while the send notification mechanism provides a user level of execution (for customizing a notification point on a user-by-user basis), the receive notification mechanism implements a device level of execution (for customizing a notification point on a device-by-device basis).

This is done because when a fax is received, the system does not necessarily know which VSI-FAX user the fax is intended for. However, the system always knows which device answered the telephone call and received the fax.

Another major difference between user notify procedures and device RNPs is that while user notify procedures are embedded in the `vfx` (send fax) command and must be specified for each fax request (they are not permanent), device RNPs are assigned to each device via the `vfxadmin device -P <RNP>` command and this assignment is permanent.

Start, stop, and fail notification

Two special notify procedures, `sys-start` and `sys-stop`, provide notification whenever the scheduler is started or stopped, respectively. A third notification procedure, `sys-devfail`, provides notification any time a physical fax device fails. A fourth notification procedure, `sys-autofail`, provides notification anytime a request in an autosend directory fails.

These notification mechanisms are much simpler than send and receive notifications. Only the system notify procedures, mentioned in the previous paragraph, can be run. Site, user, and device notify procedures are not available.

The `sys-start`, `sys-stop`, and `sys-devfail` notify procedures are not provided with the default VSI-FAX installation. You must create them according the guidelines described in Custom notify procedures and place them in the `$VSIFAX/lib/enp` directory.

Refer to these topics for additional information and sample scripts:

- Custom notify procedures
- Start and stop notify procedures (Tcl)
- Fail notify procedures

Custom notify procedures

Event notify procedures are typically Tool Command Language (Tcl) or shell scripts run by the scheduler at a particular notification point.

All notify procedures must be located in the `$VSIFAX/lib/enp` directory. This directory is the only place the fax server looks for notify procedures. In addition to any site, user, or device notify procedures you place there, this directory also contains the system LNP, TNP, GNP, and RNP scripts (`lnp-system`, `tnp-system`, `gnp-system`, and `rnp-system`).

Important
Esker strongly recommends that you do not modify the system LNP, TNP, GNP, and RNP scripts (`lnp-system`, `tnp-system`, `gnp-system`, and `rnp-system`). Improper modifications can cause unpredictable system behavior. Furthermore, any modifications to these scripts will be lost the next time you upgrade your VSI-FAX system.

Notify procedures are named as follows:

`<type>-<name>.<ext>`

Where `<type>` is `lnp, tnp, gnp, rnp, or sys` ; `<name>` is a short descriptive name for the notify procedure and `<ext>` is `tcl, sh` or other file extension associated with a command interpreter in the `notify.lst` file.

The following rules apply to `<ext>` in the naming convention:

- If there is no extension, it is assumed to be a simple executable.
- If the extension is `.sh`, the script is run using the shell interpreter.
- If the extension is `.tcl`, the script is run using the Tcl interpreter.

Note
VSI-FAX installs a Tcl interpreter with all fax server installations. Therefore, Tcl scripts will run on all supported platforms (Unix, Linux and Windows). However, shell scripts normally only run on Unix and Linux. If you want to run shell scripts on Windows, you must install a third-party shell interpreter, such as MKS Toolkit.

- If the extension is anything else, the fax server looks in the `$VSIFAX/lib/notify.lst` file for information about how to process this file.

For example, in order for the fax server to run `tnp-site.zz`, there must be a line in `notify.lst` like:

```
"zz; /<interpreter>/zz"
```

Where `zz` is an alias in the `notify.lst` file that points to the full path and file name of the command `<interpreter>` you want to use for that file extension.

Associating a device rnp script with a fax destination

To associate a device rnp script with a fax destination, enter the following:

```
vfxadmin device -u -P <partofscriptname> <faxdestination>
```

If the name of the script is `rnp-hello.tcl` and the fax destination name is `fax1`, you can use the following command to associate the script with the `fax1` destination:

```
vfxadmin device -u -P hello fax1
```

Editing notify.lst to run batch files

Add the following entry to `notify.lst` to configure VSI-FAX to run batch files:

```
bat;cmd.exe
```

Launch notify procedures (LNPs)

Site or user LNPs can be used to archive faxes, transmit accounting codes, or for fax request control.

When an LNP is run, the fax request file will always be available to the procedure. This file is `$VSIFAX/spool/temp/f-$REQID.tif` for a regular request or `$VSIFAX/spool/temp/gf-$GRPID.tif` for a group request.

Syntax

Site and user LNPs are called directly from the system LNP, which passes the following arguments to the site and user LNPs:

$1	Unique request-ID for this fax. Value is zero (0) for group fax requests.
$2	VSI-FAX user ID who submitted the fax request.
$3	Notification email address specified by the sender.
$4	Time this fax attempt was submitted.
$5	■ Notification mode specified by the sender. Values are: ■ `none` Never notify ■ `ok` Notify on success ■ `fail` Notify on failure ■ `both` Always notify ■ `each` Notify on each attempt
$6	Unique group fax request ID. Value is zero (0) for normal (non-group) fax requests.
$7	If a normal (non-group) fax, total number of pages in this fax request (including cover pages). If a group fax, number of recipients in the group.
$8	Recipient's fax number. Value is a null string ("") for group faxes.
$9	Flag indicating whether Least Cost Routing (LCR) is enabled (1) or disabled (0).

Examples

This shell script archives all regular fax requests to the `/usr/fax/archive/reg` directory and archives all group requests to the `/usr/fax/archive/grp` directory:

```
#!/bin/sh

# lnp-site.sh

REG_DIR=/usr/fax/archive/reg
GRP_DIR=/usr/fax/archive/grp

REQID=$1
GRPID=$6

if [ $GRPID -eq 0 ]

then
FILE=$VSIFAX/spool/temp/f-$REQID.tif
cp $FILE $REG_DIR/$REQID.tif

else

FILE=$VSIFAX/spool/temp/gf-$GRPID.tif
cp $FILE $GRP_DIR/$GRPID.tif

fi

exit 0
```

This shell script limits any group request to a maximum of 100 members:

```
#!/bin/sh

 # lnp-site.sh

 GRPID=$6
 NUM=$7

 if [ $GRPID -ne 0 ]

 then
 if [ $NUM -gt 100 ]

 then
 MAILADDR=$3
 echo "Group job GRPID terminated:" \
 "too many members" |
 mail $MAILADDR

 exit 1

 fi

 fi

 exit 0
```

Transmit notify procedures (TNPs)

TNPs are often used for accounting or user notification of fax request status. Although the file associated with a request may not be available when a TNP is run, the log file entry for that fax request is available.

Syntax

Site and user TNPs are called directly from the system TNP, which passes the following arguments to the site and user TNPs:

$1	Unique request-ID for this fax.
$2	VSI-FAX user ID who submitted the fax request.
$3	Notification email address specified by the sender.
$4	Time this fax attempt was submitted.
$5	■ Notification mode specified by the sender. Values are: ■ `none` Never notify ■ `ok` Notify on success ■ `fail` Notify on failure ■ `both` Always notify ■ `each` Notify on each attempt
$6	Unique group fax request ID. Value is zero (`0`) for normal (non-group) fax requests.
$7	Total number of pages in this fax request, including cover pages.
$8	Recipient's fax number.
$9	Fax attempt status code, in string format.
$10	Result status of this request.
$11	Attempt number. Zero (`0`) if fax request was canceled or otherwise failed during submission.
$12	Flag indicating whether the fax request is complete (TRUE) or not complete (FALSE).

Examples

This shell script logs all fax attempts that actually use phone time to an accounting file. The script assumes that all users put an account number in the `tg1` user tag.

```
#!/bin/sh

# tnp-site.sh
REQID=$1
eval `$VSIFAX/lbin/vfaxreq -F eval $REQID`
if [ $nat -gt 0 ] # nat is >0 if an attempt was made
then
ACCFILE=/usr/vsifax/fax.log
# accountno:request-id:time:elapsed:phonenum
echo "$tg1:$req:$stm:$ela:$tfn" >>$ACCFILE
fi
exit 0
```

Group notify procedures (GNPs)

Syntax

Site and user GNPs are called directly from the system GNP. The system GNP passes the following arguments to the site and user GNPs:

`$1`	Unique request-ID for this fax. Same as Group-ID.
`$2`	VSI-FAX user ID who submitted the fax request.
`$3`	Notification email address specified by the sender.
`$4`	Time this fax attempt was submitted.
`$5`	■ Notification mode specified by the sender. Values are: ■ `none` Never notify ■ `ok` Notify on success ■ `fail` Notify on failure ■ `both` Always notify ■ `each` Notify on each attempt
`$6`	Unique group fax request ID. Same as Request-ID
`$7`	Total number of recipients (members) in this group.
`$8`	Total number of recipient (member) faxes successfully sent.
`$9`	Total number of recipient (member) faxes that failed.
`$10`	Any user GNP specified.

Examples

This shell script generates a verbose log file for a group fax job:

```
#!/bin/sh
# gnp-site.sh
#

REQID="$1"
CLIENTID="$2"
MAILADDR="$3"
```

```
SENDTIME="$4"
NOTIFY="$5"
GRPID="$6"
NUM_MEMS="$7"
NUM_SENT="$8"
NUM_FAIL="$9"
shift
USER_GNP="$9"

# ------------------------------------------------------
# generate a status log for the entire group, and write to file

"$VSIFAX/bin/vfxstat" g-$GRPID > /tmp/GroupFax.log
echo "------------------------ --------------------" >> /tmp/GroupFax.log
echo " " >> /tmp/GroupFax.log
"$VSIFAX/bin/vfxolog" -t gse=$GRPID >> /tmp/GroupFax.log

exit 0
```

Receive notify procedures (RNPs)

Syntax

Site and device RNPs are called directly from the system RNP, which passes the following arguments to the site and user GNPs:

Tip
If you require additional information not present in these parameters, the`vfxilog` command can be used to access other information about this fax request from the inbound fax log database.

$1	Full path and file name of the received fax file.
$2	Name of the fax device or class that received this fax.
$3	Inbox specified for this device or class or the VSI-FAX user who will receive the routed fax.
$4	■ Status of the fax. This controls RNP behavior. Values are: ■ `received` Run this RNP as soon as a fax is received (prior to routing) ■ `routed` Run this RNP whenever a fax is routed to a user.

Examples

This shell script automatically removes the header line from received faxes:

```
# rnp-clrhdr.sh
FILE=$1
vtifftool clear -c -o $FILE $FILE
exit 0
```

To associate a device rnp script with a fax destination, use the following syntax:

```
vfxadmin device -u -P <partofscriptname> <faxdestination>
```

Start and stop notify procedures (Tcl)

Syntax

These arguments are passed to `sys-start` and `sys-stop`.

$1 is the Numerical Process ID (PID) of the scheduler.

Tip

If the sys-start script exits with a non-zero exit code, the server will shut down. This allows you to make special checks and ensure that the server will not run unless your criteria are met.

Examples for Unix and Linux platforms

The following sample scripts run on **Unix and Linux platforms only** (not on Windows platforms).

Below is a sample start Tcl script (`sys-start.tcl`) that logs each time the fax server is started and what numerical process ID (PID) is assigned to it:

```
# Filename: sys-start.tcl
# Description: script that is run startup of the fax scheduler.
#-----------------------------------------------------
global argv argc env

#-----------------------------------------------------
# Get all arguments and setup environment
set PID [lindex $argv 0 ]
set f [open $VSIFAX/spool/logs/sys-start.log a+]

#-----------------------------------------------------
# Update log file
puts $f "The fax scheduler was started at: "
puts $f "The process ID is $PID"

exit 0
```

This is a sample start shell script (`sys-start.sh`) that logs each time the fax server is started and what numerical process ID (PID) is assigned to it:

```
#!/bin/sh
#
# Filename: sys-start.sh
# Description: Script that is run at startup of the fax scheduler

# -----------------------------------------------------
# Get arguments
PID="$1"
LOG="$VSIFAX/spool/logs/sys-start.log"
# -----------------------------------------------------
# Update log file
echo "The fax scheduler was started at: `date`" > $LOG
echo "The process ID is $PID" > $LOG
# -----------------------------------------------------
#
exit 0
```

Below is a sample stop Tcl script (`sys-stop.tcl`) that sends an email message to `anon@example.com` every time the fax server is stopped:

```
#
# Filename: sys-stop.tcl
# Description: script that is at shutdown of scheduler
#-----------------------------------------------------
global argv argc env
#-----------------------------------------------------
# Get all arguments and setup environment
set PID [lindex $argv 0 ]
set VSIFAX $env(VSIFAX)
set EMAIL "anon@example.com"
set SUBJECT "Warning from Esker"
set TMP_DIR "$VSIFAX/spool/temp"
set f [open $VSIFAX/spool/logs/sys-stop.log w]
```

```
#-----------------------------------------------
#
# Update log file
puts $f "The fax scheduler was stopped"
# Email notification to specified mail address
catch { [ exec "$VSIFAX/lbin/vmime -t \
-o$VSIFAX/spool/temp/stopwarn \
$VSIFAX/spool/logs/sys-stop.log" ] }
catch { [ exec "$VSIFAX/lbin/vmail" "$EMAIL" \
"$VSIFAX/spool/temp/stopwarn" ] }
#
exit 0
```

Below is a sample stop shell script (`sys-stop.sh`) that sends an email message to `anon@example.com` every time the fax server is stopped:

```
#!/bin/sh
#
# Filename: sys-stop.sh
# Description: script that is run at shutdown of scheduler

#-----------------------------------------------------
# Get arguments
PID="$1"
LOG="$VSIFAX/spool/logs/sys-stop.log"
EMAIL="anon@example.com"
SUBJECT="Warning from Esker"
# -----------------------------------------------------
# Update log file
echo "The fax scheduler was stopped at: `date`" > $LOG
# Email notification to specified mail address
$VSIFAX/lbin/vmime -t -s "$SUBJECT" \
-o $VSIFAX/spool/temp/stopwarn \
$VSIFAX/spool/logs/sys-stop.log
$VSIFAX/lbin/vmail $EMAIL $VSIFAX/spool/temp/stopwarn
rm $VSIFAX/spool/temp/stopwarn
# -----------------------------------------------------
#
exit 0
```

Examples for Windows platforms

The following sample scripts run on **Windows platforms only** (not on Unix and Linux platforms).

Below is a sample start Tcl script (`sys-start.tcl`) that is called when the VSI-FAX server starts. It logs the start time in %VSI-FAX%/spool/logs/sysstart and sends an email to an administrator.

```
#-----------------------------------------------------
# sys-start.tcl
# VSI-FAX scheduler start notification for Windows
#-----------------------------------------------------

#-----------------------------------------------------
# Get all arguments and setup environment
#-----------------------------------------------------
global argv env
set PID [lindex $argv 0]
set VSIFAX $env(VSIFAX)
set TIMESTAMP [ clock format [ clock seconds ] -format {%Y/%m/%d %H:%M:%S} ]
set ERROR "VSI-FAX scheduler \[$PID\] started"
set EMAIL email@address.com

#-----------------------------------------------------
# Update log file
#-----------------------------------------------------
set f [ open $VSIFAX\\spool\\logs\\sysstart a+ ]
```

```
puts $f "$TIMESTAMP $ERROR"
close $f

#-------------------------------------------------------
# Create email file
#-------------------------------------------------------
set g [ open $VSIFAX\\spool\\temp\\sysstart w+ ]
puts $g "$TIMESTAMP $ERROR"
close $g

#-------------------------------------------------------
# Email notification to specified mail address
#-------------------------------------------------------
exec "$VSIFAX\\lbin\\vmime" -t -s $ERROR "$VSIFAX\\spool\\temp\\sysstart" | \
"$VSIFAX\\lbin\\vmail" -R $EMAIL $EMAIL
file delete "$VSIFAX\\spool\\temp\\sysstart"

exit 0
```

Below is a sample stop Tcl script (`sys-stop-tcl`) that is called when the VSI-FAX server stops. It logs the stoptime in %VSI-FAX%/spool/logs/sysstop and sends an email to an administrator.

```
#-------------------------------------------------------
# sys-stop.tcl
# VSI-FAX scheduler stop notification for Windows
#-------------------------------------------------------

#-------------------------------------------------------
# Get all arguments and setup environment
#-------------------------------------------------------
global argv env
set PID [lindex $argv 0]
set VSIFAX $env(VSIFAX)
set TIMESTAMP [ clock format [ clock seconds ] -format {%Y/%m/%d %H:%M:%S} ]
set ERROR "VSI-FAX scheduler \[$PID\] stopped"
set EMAIL email@address.com

#-------------------------------------------------------
# Update log file
#-------------------------------------------------------
set f [ open $VSIFAX\\spool\\logs\\sysstop a+ ]
puts $f "$TIMESTAMP $ERROR"
close $f

#-------------------------------------------------------
# Create email file
#-------------------------------------------------------
set g [ open $VSIFAX\\spool\\temp\\sysstop w+ ]
puts $g "$TIMESTAMP $ERROR"
close $g

#-------------------------------------------------------
# Email notification to specified mail address
#-------------------------------------------------------
exec "$VSIFAX\\lbin\\vmime" -t -s $ERROR "$VSIFAX\\spool\\temp\\sysstop" | \
"$VSIFAX\\lbin\\vmail" -R $EMAIL $EMAIL

file delete "$VSIFAX\\spool\\temp\\sysstop"

exit 0
```

Fail notify procedures

Syntax

These arguments are passed to `sys-devfail` :

$1	Device name.
$2	Reason for the failure.

Example for Unix and Linux platforms

The following samples run on **Unix and Linux platforms only** (not on Windows platforms).

Below is a sample device fail Tcl script (`sys-devfail.tcl`) that automatically re-enables any failed device and records the incident to a log file:

```
# Tcl script that runs when a fax device has failed.
#-----------------------------------------------------
global argv argc env
#-----------------------------------------------------
# Get all arguments and setup environment
set DEVICE [lindex $argv 0 ]
set REASON [lindex $argv 1 ]
set VSIFAX $env(VSIFAX)
set TMP_DIR "$VSIFAX/spool/temp"
set f [open $VSIFAX/spool/logs/devfail.log a+]
#-----------------------------------------------------
#
# Update log file
puts $f "Device $DEVICE failed due to $REASON"

exit 0
```

Below is a sample device fail shell script (`sys-devfail.sh`) that automatically re-enables any failed device and records the incident to a log file:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Description:
# -----------------------------------------------------
#exec > $VSIFAX/spool/logs/sysdev.log ; set -x
#-----------------------------------------------------
# Get arguments
DEST=$1
CAUSE=$2
LOG="$VSIFAX/spool/logs/devfail.log"
#
# Update log file
echo "Device $DEST was restarted due to $CAUSE" >> $LOG
#
exit 0
```

Example for Windows platforms

Below is a sample device fail Tcl script (`sys-devfail.tcl`) that runs **only on Windows platforms** (not on Unix and Linux platforms). It is called when a fax device goes down (for instance, after having encountered too many errors). It logs the device failure and the failure reason in %VSI-FAX%/spool/logs/devfail, it sends a notification email to an administrator and it re-enables the device.

```
#-----------------------------------------------------------
# sys-devfail.tcl
# VSI-FAX Device failure notification and restart for Windows
#-----------------------------------------------------------

#-----------------------------------------------------------
# Get all arguments and setup environment
#-----------------------------------------------------------
global argv env
```

```
set DEVICE [lindex $argv 0]
set REASON [lindex $argv 1]
set VSIFAX $env(VSIFAX)
set TIMESTAMP [ clock format [ clock seconds ] -format {%Y/%m/%d %H:%M:%S} ]
set ERROR "Device $DEVICE failed: $REASON"
set EMAIL email@address.com

#-------------------------------------------------------
# Update log file
#-------------------------------------------------------
set f [ open $VSIFAX\\spool\\logs\\devfail a+ ]
puts $f "$TIMESTAMP $ERROR"
close $f

#-------------------------------------------------------
# Create email file
#-------------------------------------------------------
set g [ open $VSIFAX\\spool\\temp\\devfail w+ ]
puts $g "$TIMESTAMP $ERROR"
close $g

#-------------------------------------------------------
# Email notification to specified mail address
#-------------------------------------------------------
exec "$VSIFAX\\lbin\\vmime" -t -s $ERROR "$VSIFAX\\spool\\temp\\devfail" | \
"$VSIFAX\\lbin\\vmail" -R $EMAIL $EMAIL
file delete "$VSIFAX\\spool\\temp\\devfail"

#-------------------------------------------------------
# Issue command to re-enable fax device
#-------------------------------------------------------
exec "$VSIFAX\\bin\\vfxadmin" disable $DEVICE
exec "$VSIFAX\\bin\\vfxadmin" enable $DEVICE

exit 0
```

User-change notification script

Syntax

The `sys-usrchg` procedure processes changes in the user database. These arguments are passed to `sys-usrchg` :

$1	ClientID changed
$2	Type of change (add, delete, or update)

Example for Unix and Linux platforms

The shell script below runs on **Unix and Linux platforms only** (not on Windows platforms).

This sample sends an email notification whenever the user database is changed:

```
# ------------------------------------------------
# process changes in the user database
#
clientid=$1
action=$2

$VSIFAX/lbin/vmime -t -s "user database change" <<-EOF |
The following user database change has been made:
$action $clientid
```

```
EOF
$VSIFAX/lbin/vmail <email address>
```

Example for Windows platforms

The script below runs on **Windows platforms only** (not on Unix and Linux platforms).

This sample is called when modifying a user profile setting. It logs the modification in `%VSI-FAX%/spool/logs/usrschg` and sends a notification email to an administrator.

```
#-------------------------------------------------------
# sys-usrchg.tcl
# VSI-FAX user change notification for Windows
#-------------------------------------------------------

#-------------------------------------------------------
# Get all arguments and setup environment
#-------------------------------------------------------
global argv env
set CLIENTID [lindex $argv 0]
set CHANGE [lindex $argv 1]
set VSIFAX $env(VSIFAX)
set TIMESTAMP [ clock format [ clock seconds ] -format {%Y/%m/%d %H:%M:%S} ]
set ERROR "VSI-FAX user database change: $CHANGE $CLIENTID"
set EMAIL email@address.com

#-------------------------------------------------------
# Update log file
#-------------------------------------------------------
set f [ open $VSIFAX\\spool\\logs\\usrchg a+ ]
puts $f "$TIMESTAMP $ERROR"
close $f

#-------------------------------------------------------
# Create email file
#-------------------------------------------------------
set g [ open $VSIFAX\\spool\\temp\\usrchg w+ ]
puts $g "$TIMESTAMP $ERROR"
close $g

#-------------------------------------------------------
# Email notification to specified mail address
#-------------------------------------------------------
exec "$VSIFAX\\lbin\\vmime" -t -s $ERROR "$VSIFAX\\spool\\temp\\usrchg" | \
"$VSIFAX\\lbin\\vmail" -R $EMAIL $EMAIL
file delete "$VSIFAX\\spool\\temp\\usrchg"

exit 0
```

Customizing notification email messages

You can easily customize email messages sent at various points in the notification mechanism using template files.

See also
For more information, refer to Template files.

Simply create a template file, place it in `$VSIFAX/lib/templates` directory, then associate it with one of the following notification points in a user profile or by directly setting the appropriate tag in the user database.

The following table shows which notification messages can be customized and which user tags must be set to accomplish that.

Notification Message	User Database Tag
Receive notification	vtp
Routed notification	rtp
Successful send notification	sto
Failed send notification	stn
Group send notification	stg

LDAP Setup and Configuration

LDAP Setup and Configuration

VSI-FAX supports the use of Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) directories to retrieve fax recipient (i.e., to) information when sending faxes by placing files in the `autosend` directory. However, before you can send a fax using LDAP data, you must configure various VSI-FAX settings that control how to connect to the LDAP server and map the information in the LDAP directory so VSI-FAX knows where to find certain essential fax information (e.g., fax number, recipient name, etc.) at send time.

Note
Esker does not provide LDAP software. VSI-FAX simply has the capability of connecting to your LDAP server and retrieving information from your LDAP directory.

Fundamentals

LDAP is an open standard protocol for accessing information services. Essentially, LDAP is a directory service that is structured and behaves like a database.

LDAP directories are based on client/server models and use regular TCP/IP networking. LDAP servers typically listen on port 389. Client programs that can access LDAP directories include Microsoft Outlook, Lotus Notes, Netscape Communicator and many others.

LDAP documentation

LDAP is an open standard that is documented in various Request For Comments (RFC) white papers. These RFCs are available from many sources on the World Wide Web. Currently, the OpenLDAP Foundation.

www.openLDAP.org is an excellent source of online LDAP documentation.

Basic LDAP structure and organization

LDAP directories contain records. These records contain various attributes, which are used to store information. Consider the following simplified LDAP record:

```
dn: Jim Smith, o=Acme Corp.
givenName: Jim
sn: Smith
mail: jsmith@acme.com
c: US
```

These are the attributes stored in this record:

Attribute	Description
c	Country
dn	Distinguished name. This attribute always stores a unique indentifier for that LDAP record (no two records in the same LDAP directory can have the same dn value).
givenName	Given (first name)
mail	Email address
o	Organization
sn	Surname (last name)

Note
The attributes shown in this example are common to most LDAP directories.

Attribute names (dn, cn, givenName, etc.) are loosely defined in various RFCs. Although attribute names are defined in RFCs, the standard is very informal. Therefore, each LDAP server may use slightly different attribute names to store data.

One of the setup tasks for using an LDAP directory with VSI-FAX will be to map certain essential LDAP attributes (e.g., the attributes for fax number, recipient name, etc.) to VSI-FAX tags so that VSI-FAX can find and use them at send time. This mapping information is stored in the datasource database.

Important
Because attribute names may differ among LDAP servers, it is beyond the scope of this documentation to provide exact mapping parameters that will work with every LDAP directory. Instead, you must list the attributes in your LDAP directory and determine which ones store essential fax information. Consult your LDAP administrator to obtain a list of attributes used on your LDAP server.

Sample LDAP attribute mappings

The following tables shows some sample LDAP attribute mappings. These settings may or may not be compatible with your LDAP directory. They should only be considered as examples and possible initial settings for your LDAP directory.

VSI-FAX Info	LDAP Attribute Name		
	Microsoft Exchange	Lotus Domino	ldap.vsi.com
First name	`givenName`	`givenName`	`givenname`
Last name	`sn`	`sn`	`sn`
Company	`Company`	`CompanyName`	`company`
Phone	`Phone`	`telephoneNumber`	`phone`
Fax	`facsimileTelephoneNumber`	`facsimileTelephoneNumber`	`facsimiletelephonenumber`
Email	`mail`	`mail`	`mail`
Address 1	`postalAddress`	`OfficeStreetAddress`	`postaladdress`
Address 2	`l`	`L`	`l`
Address 3	`st`	`st`	`st`
Country	`co`	`c`	`co`

General LDAP notes

Search Base

LDAP directories are arranged in a tree-like manner. The search base is used to specify which branch of the tree to start searching on.

For example, using a search base of c=US starts searching on the branch for entries in the US.

If no search base is specified, the search will start looking globally (from the top-most branch), which could take a long time.

Scope

The values for scope define whether a search can descend into other branches of the LDAP tree. Possible values:

- Base: the search will only search the current branch.
- One level: allows descending down only one level.

- Subtree: allows the search to descend into any branches that exist below the starting point.

Authentication

Most LDAP servers allow anonymous read-only access. If an LDAP server requires authentication, your distinguished name (dn) and password can be specified in the Directory Properties User ID and Password fields, respectively.

See also
See Modifying LDAP directory settings for additional information.

Administration techniques

The only way to setup and configure VSI-FAX to use an LDAP directory is via VSI-FAX Server Administration-these features and functions are not available from the command line.

Ensure that you have the VSI-FAX Server Administration software installed on a Windows computer with network access to the fax server before beginning LDAP setup and configuration.

Adding a new LDAP directory

1. Start Microsoft Management Console (MMC) and load the VSI-FAX Server Administration snap-in.
2. Connect to the fax server by selecting the desired server node and choosing Action > Connect or right mouse click and select Connect.

   The Login dialog box appears.
3. Enter your fax administration user ID and password.
4. Click OK.

   The Login dialog box closes.
5. From the VSI-FAX Server Administration snap-in, select the Directories\External node and choose Action > New > Directory or right mouse and select New > Directory.

   The New External Directory Wizard appears.
6. Enter the following:
7. Source ID: enter a unique identifier for this LDAP directory.
8. Source name: enter a common name for this LDAP directory.
9. Data server: enter the fully-qualified network node name or IP address.
10. Select LDAP from the Directory type drop-down list.
11. Click Next to proceed to the next LDAP configuration screen.
12. Enter one or more attribute name/value pairs in the Search base field.

    A common search base entry is c=US. The search base is dependant upon the entries within the LDAP directory itself. Some LDAP directories can use nothing, others may require multiple attribute name/value pairs.

    To enter multiple attribute name/value pairs in this field, separate each name/value pair with a comma.
13. Select a search scope setting from the drop-down list.

    Important
    Most LDAP directories communicate over data port 389. If yours does not, perform this step, otherwise skip this step.
14. Set the Custom Port option and enter your LDAP directory data port.
15. Click Next to proceed to the next LDAP configuration screen.

    This configuration screen is where you map your LDAP attribute names to VSI-FAX tags so that the LDAP data can be properly retrieved at send time.
16. Enter your LDAP attribute names in the appropriate fields.

Important

The only required attribute mappings are First name, Last name, and either Fax (number) or Email (address). The first two allow you to locate a specific recipient; either of the remaining two are used to actually send the fax. The remaining mappings are supplied for your convenience; that information will appear on your fax cover pages.

17. Click Finish, and the New External Directory Wizard closes.

Testing your LDAP configuration and setup

The external directory properties dialog box provides a Configuration Test feature that allows an LDAP server to be queried using your current confirmation settings and attribute mappings.

1. From VSI-FAX Server Administration, select the Directories\External node.

   A list of available external directories appears in the list pane.
2. Select the LDAP directory node and choose `Action > Properties` or right mouse click and select `Properties`.

   The external directory properties dialog box appears.
3. Go to the LDAP tab.
4. Click `Configuration Test`.

   The LDAP Directory Search dialog box appears.

   The next part of this procedure involves structuring a simple query. For example, searching for a common last name such as "smith" is usually successful, provided that the LDAP directory is large enough.
5. Enter a value in one of the available search fields.
6. Select one of the Boolean operators from the drop-down list.
7. Click `Search`.

   If successful, a status dialog box notifies you that the search successfully completed and how many records met your search criteria.

   If you receive an error, modify your current configuration settings and attribute mappings and try again.
8. Click `Close`.

   The LDAP Directory Search dialog box closes.
9. Click `OK`, and the external directory properties dialog box closes.

Granting users access to LDAP

For normal users to send faxes using an LDAP directory, they must first be granted permission to access that directory in their VSI-FAX user profile.

1. From VSI-FAX Server Administration, select the user profile and choose `Action > Properties` or right mouse click and select `Properties`.

   The Profile Properties sheet appears.
2. Go to the Directories tab.
3. Set or unset the LDAP directories this user is allowed to access.

   Note

   If you want to use the directory settings in the master profile, set the Use parent directories option.
4. Click OK, and the Profile Properties sheet closes.

See also

For more information, refer to Profiles.

Modifying LDAP directory settings

LDAP directory configuration settings and attribute name mappings can be modified via the directory properties sheet.

1. From VSI-FAX Server Administration, select the Directories\External node.

   A list of available external directories appears in the list pane.
2. Select the LDAP directory node and choose Action > Properties or right mouse click and select Properties.

   The external directory properties dialog box appears.
3. Make your changes.
4. Click OK, and the external directory properties dialog box closes.

Using the LDAP directory when sending faxes

Important
External LDAP directories can only be used when sending faxes by placing files in the `autosend` directory. You cannot use LDAP Directories when sending faxes from the Command Shell or from VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client and VSI-FAX Outlook Client.

Once you have added the LDAP Directory you want to use in VSI-FAX Server Administration (see Adding a new LDAP directory) and granted users access to this LDAP Directory (see Granting users access to LDAP directories), you can submit faxes in the `$VSIFAX\autosend` directory.

For example, submit a `a.tag` file that contains the following tags:

```
cli=vsifax
pal=Smith, Rebecca
fll=c:\sample.txt
```

Since the search is done on the `cn` attribute of the users in the database, you need to indicate the user's full name in the `pal` tag.

You need to have mapped at least the `Fax` and the `Email` fields in the properties of the LDAP Directory in the MMC for the server to be able to find destinations for outgoing faxes. The fax will be sent to the fax number that matches the full name specified, or to the email address specified if no fax number is found.

Least Cost Routing

Least Cost Routing

Least Cost Routing (LCR) provides an economical way of sending faxes to the fax server closest to the ultimate destination. When a fax is submitted, the system looks in the LCR rules file to find a fax destination that handles faxes for a specific area code and/or country. If no match is found, the fax is sent locally.

The LCR function consists of two tables: an LCR rules file and an LCR routes file. The LCR rules file contains information about the routes and the associated country codes and area codes for that route. The LCR routes file contains the routes and their associated email addresses.

Let's assume you have a fax domain in New York and one in London, and your company sends a lot of faxes from New York to Paris. Rather than sending the Paris faxes from the New York fax domain, you can create an LCR entry in the LCR rules file that will route the Paris faxes via the London fax domain. As a result you save on the transatlantic phone costs.

LCR can be turned on or off using the `lcr` tag. The `lcr` tag defaults to `true`, allowing Least Cost Routing of faxes based on country and area codes. However, you can turn `LCR` off by setting the `lcr` tag to `false`.

Functional overview

Once a fax is submitted for transmission, VSI-FAX determines what type of request you are sending. If the request is a simple request, the dial string is converted and subsequently examined by the fax server on which the request is entered. The server checks the LCR rules file to see if the fax number qualifies for routing.

If the number matches the LCR rules file, the fax server builds a tag file containing information from the local fax request database to describe the fax request. Items such as recipient name, recipient company, from hostname, and from sequence number are included in this tag file to ensure the remote server's log is as complete as possible.

The `vfxolog` shows information for both local and LCR routed faxes transmitted on behalf of another fax server. It should be noted that, for security reasons, all routed faxes are submitted to a remote fax server with a client ID of `vsilcr`.

The initiating fax server emails the fax request to the fax server specified in the LCR routes file. The fax servers poll the mail account specified in the `[VPOPD]` section of the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file and look for messages. When the server receives the email message, it drops it into the `autosend` directory as a tag file and proceeds to send the fax out. The LCR system does the following:

1. Generates a response for the fax request.
2. Sends the response back to the originating server.
3. Updates the `vfxolog` status.
4. Completes the fax request.

Note

When `vfxolog` output is viewed after the fax is complete, two entries will be added. The first is the original fax request, and the second is the LCR fax request. The LCR request will have a client ID of `vsilcr`. User `vsilcr` is installed by default and should never be removed.

LCR cluster

An LCR cluster is two or more LCR-enabled fax servers configured to route faxes among one another in order to minimize telephone charges.

Each server in the LCR Cluster must be identified with a route name. To do this you must edit the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file and add the name of the server. This name can either be the hostname for the server or a descriptive city/location name. Edit the file by making the following entry in the `vsisrv.ini` file:

```
[LCR]
 route-name=NewYork
```

Launch Notify Procedure (LNP)

The LNP is a VSI-FAX script when a fax is queued to the system but before it is transmitted. The LCR operation is accomplished via the standard VSI-FAX LNP procedure. The LCR LNP determines whether the fax request is a group request (containing multiple recipients) or a normal fax (containing a single recipient).

POP client

In addition to the LNP, LCR functionality requires each fax server to have the email-to-fax gateway installed and configured in order to retrieve and provide status for routed faxes that are directed to it. It should be noted that the email-to-fax gateway feature is a standard component included with all fax servers and only requires minimal configuration to use.

Additionally, each LCR-enabled fax server requires exclusive access to a POP email account. This account can be shared with the VSI-FAX email-to-fax gateway feature, but cannot be used by any other client application or user. For purposes of clarity, this email account will be referred to in the rest of this documentation as the `autofax` account.

Setting up routes

This section describes how the routes and LCR rules files are used by LCR to determine the routing of faxes. Based on the previous example of two servers, one in New York and one in London, the following explanation shows how the files would be set up.

The LCR function requires that dialing rules be established to match fax numbers. Fax dialing numbers are matched based on the patterns and wildcards used to set up the LCR rules file. In addition to the structure of the LCR rules files, the following rules should be considered:

- If the dialing digits contains commas, LCR is not performed.
- All non-digits such as parentheses, hyphens, etc., are removed from the phone numbers.
- Any dialing digits set in brackets are assumed to be a credit card number and are not used.
- Any digits that appear after an @ sign are assumed to be an extension number.

LCR routes file

The LCR routes file (`lcrhosts.lst`) is used to associate each route to the email account and is located in the `$VSIFAX/lib` directory.

The following is an example of an LCR routes file.

```
# Sample LCR routes fil
#
# <route_owner>:<transport_account>
#
NewYork:New_York@abc.com
LondonUK:lfaxes@fax.sys.co.uk
```

Note

LCR is designed to allow all fax servers to share the same routing tables. Once these files are set up, they must be distributed and copied to all servers in a cluster.

See also

Refer to *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation for additional information.

LCR rules file

The LCR rules file (`lcrrules.lst`) is used to associate a country code and area code to a route name and is located in the `vsifax/lib` directory.

The following is an example of an LCR rules file.

```
# Sample LCR rules file
#
# <dial_string-skeleton>:<route_owner>
#
# US rules (by area code)
#
[1]212???????:NewYork
019*:LondonUK
```

In the first entry of the previous example, the presence of a digit between brackets [ ] indicates that the digit is optional. That is, any dial string that starts with or without a 1 followed by 212 followed by any seven digits will be sent through the New York server.

The second entry indicates that any fax sent with the number 019 followed by any digits will be sent through the London server.

Note
LCR is designed to allow all fax servers to share the same routing and LCR rules files. Once these files are set up, they must be distributed and copied to all servers in a cluster.

See also
Refer to *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation for additional information.

Using wildcards in the LCR rules file

Entering an asterisk (*) in the LCR rules file tells the system to match any value(s) in that portion of the dial string. For example, in the file shown in LCR rules file, the entry `019*:LondonUK` tells the system that any dial string starting with 019 will be routed to London.

Note
We strongly recommend that any entries using the `*` be placed at the end of the LCR rules file to eliminate the possibility of routing a fax to the wrong location. For example, `if 1*:LosAngeles` were the first entry in the file all the other entries starting with 1 would be ignored. This is because entering the `*` after the first digit tells the system that all dial strings starting with a 1 followed by any digits should be routed to Los Angeles.

Question marks (?) can also be used as wild cards to represent exactly one digit. For example, the entry `1714555-5???` would match any number starting with `1714555` and ending with four digits between `5000` and `5999`. Similarly, the entry `1714???????` would match any number starting with `1714` followed by 7 digits.

Verifying entries in the routes and LCR rules files

LCR requires that for every route in either of the files, a corresponding setup entry must be in the other file. For example, if you set up an entry in the LCR routes file for the server in New York, you must also have the New York entry in the LCR rules file. After you complete the setup of the Routes and LCR rules files you can use the following command to verify that the two files are consistent. Enter:

```
vlcrchk -cv
```

This command compares the entries in the LCR routes file to the entries in the LCR rules file. If the system finds a route entry that does not have a corresponding route in the other file, it will report it, allowing you to correct the synchronization of the two files.

An additional check you can run is to verify the route name for a specific fax number by entering:

```
vlcrchk -n xxx-xxx-xxxx
```

Configuring the email-to-fax gateway

1. Edit the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file and add the entries to the `[VPOPD]` section for the POP3 mail server account.
2. Add a password using the `vfxadminconfig` command. For syntax see the `vsisrv.ini` password entry is encrypted, therefore it cannot be directly added via a text editor. You must use the `vfxadmin` command line utility to add this entry..
3. Verify the configuration is correct by sending email to the email-to-fax gateway account.
4. Configure the `[VMAIL]` section of the `vsisrv.ini` file and confirm it is working by using the `vmail -D` command to send an email message.
5. Edit the `[LCR]` section of the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file as follows:
6. Add a `route-name=<name_of_route>` entry.

   Each machine in a group (cluster) must have a unique route name.

   - Add a `debug=on` entry (optional).
   - Add entries to specify route names and email addresses to the `$VSIFAX/lib/lcrhosts.lst` file. For example:

     ```
     AUTOFAX@hostname.company.com
     ```

   Important

   Note that the email address must be fully qualified.
7. Add entries for rules that will trigger the LCR events to the `$VSIFAX/lib/lcrrules.lst` file. For example:

   ```
   [1]714*:lcrsupport
   ```
8. Copy both the `lcrhosts.lst and lcrrules.lst` files to all servers in the cluster.
9. Verify the completeness and correctness of the LCR rules you established using the `vlcrchk -v` command.

Statusing LCR fax requests

In order to get status of faxes that have been routed to a remote fax server, LCR provides a pseudo-device `(lcr)`as well as an SMTP message type `(stat_msg)`, which that are recognized by the VSI-FAX POP client process. The `lcr` pseudo-device enables the originating fax server to maintain a tracer for fax requests that have been routed to a remote fax server. Faxes that have been routed continue to appear in the `lcr` device queue with current status information until transmitted by the remote server.

The status information of a routed fax is delivered from the remote fax server system transmit notify procedure to the originating fax server using SMTP mail messages. These messages are communicated using the same transport, the email-to-fax gateway.

Upon retrieval of a message having the type `stat_msg`, the originating fax server decodes and updates the local databases with the current status of the remotely routed fax.

Status information, while slightly less real-time in nature due to the SMTP transport, is provided by `vfxstat` in the same way as it is for non-routed faxes.

Statusing using the Transmit Notify Procedure

LCR uses a pseudo-device (called `lcr`) to provides status information to the originating fax server of a routed fax request, through the use of the system transmit notify procedure (TNP).

To accomplish this, upon transmission of a fax, an LCR-enabled server determines if the fax was routed. If it was, an SMTP message of type `stat_msg` is constructed and mailed back to the originating fax server's autofax account.

LCR tags

LCR uses five tags in the `ologreg and ologgrp` database:

Tag	Definition
`lcr`	route fax
`fhn`	from hostname
`thn`	to hostname
`tsq`	to sequence number
`fsq`	from sequence number

The `lcr` tag determines whether a fax should be considered a candidate for being routed. It can also be used to override the LCR rules and send a fax locally.

For example, the following shows how to set the `lcr` tag:

```
vfx -n 949-123-4567 -t lcr=false /etc/group
```

For a fax request, the `fhn`, `thn`, `tsq`, and `fsq` tags determine the to and from hostname and the to and from sequence number. For a routed fax, these fields indicate the node where the fax originated, where the fax was routed, the originating server's request ID assigned to the request, and the request ID of the remote server assigned to the request. Faxes that are not routed will contain the local fax server's hostname and the request ID in these tags.

Imaging Server Setup and Configuration

Imaging Server Setup and Configuration

An imaging server provides extended imaging services for a Unix/Linux fax server. If you have both a Unix/Linux fax server and a Windows fax server on the same network, you can configure them such that the Windows fax server images the additional file types, not normally available on Unix/Linux, for the Unix/Linux fax server.

In order to implement an imaging server, you must have a full VSI-FAX server installed on both the Unix/Linux and Windows hosts.

Important

A license is required to implement extended imaging services for your Unix/Linux production fax server. Please enter the following license during VSI-FAX Server installation on the Windows computer:

```
Serial number: 961000320211733-061-0
Activation key: 7TGW-DD5O-FB2L-AOBP
```

To set up an imaging server, perform the following:

1. Verify that VSI-FAX Server is installed with the above license on the Windows computer you intend to use as the imaging server.

   The remainder of the imaging server setup is performed at the Unix fax server.
2. Stop the scheduler.
3. Modify the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file by adding the following entry to the `VSINET` section:

   ```
   image-server=<host_name>
   ```

   Where `<host_name>` is the network name of the Windows fax server.
4. Start the scheduler.

Image server issues (Unix only)

It is important that the image server be up and running before the VSI-FAX server is started. For this reason:

- The `vfxsched` program checks if an image server is specified when it is starting the fax server, and if so, it "pings" the image server to ensure that it is running. If the image server is not running, `vfxsched` will output an error message and not start the fax server.
- If any of the files needed for a fax envelope are on the image server and that server is down, then the job is queued for later processing when the image server is back up. In this case, the job will stay in a SUBMIT state. An entry is written to the `vnetfax` log indicating that the job is queued waiting for the image server to come up. When it does, all queued jobs are processed.
- If the Unix server is shut down, any queued jobs are saved and are reloaded when the server is started again.

Whenever the image server goes down or comes back up, a system notify script `imgsvr` is run if present. This script is called as follows:

```
sys-imgsvr.<ext> <image-server> up|down
```

This can be used to notify an administrator that the image server needs attention.

There are two config entries which control this behavior, both are in the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file, in the `VSINET` section:

`image-server = <name>` Hostname or IP address of the image server. Default is no image server is defined.

`image-server-delay = <secs>` The number of seconds between pings of the image server if it is detected to be down. Default is 60 seconds.

Checking the conversion possibilities

Once the Linux/Unix server has been configured to use a Windows Imaging server, you can verify that those two servers are able to communicate properly.

You can issue a `vinfo -D -v filetypes` command on the Unix/Linux server and verify that you get the result from the Windows imaging server with the conversion paths for the Microsoft Office documents.

If this command does not list the appropriate conversion paths, you can verify that the server name defined in the vsisrv.ini file is correct and you can also verify that the 2996 port used for the communication between the servers is open.

Using the add-on formatters

There is a known issue with the imaging servers and the add-on formatters: the Unix/Linux server will not be able to use these add-on formatters for a conversion. They do not appear in the conversion path list when doing a `vinfo` command.

Problem

The Windows imaging server has the add-on formatters installed and can convert the doc or xls files correctly with a `vfx -o` command line. However, when doing the same command from the Unix/Linux server, the resulting .tif file has hundreds of garbage characters pages. This happens because the mstotif converter is actually used and the Word document is converted using an inappropriate application.

Solution

To workaround this problem, you can either install Microsoft Office on the Windows server or the Office Viewers (freely available on the Microsoft Website). Then, you need to associate the application with the file type and the conversion will be done with mstotif using an appropriate Windows application to open and print the document on the VSI-FAX server printer. (external formatter used).

Server Maintenance

Server Maintenance

After the installation of a fax server and during its normal use, system resources will be allocated for the various storage and log operations. Over time, the allocation of resources can cause problems such as poor performance, running out of disk space, and data corruption. In conjunction with normal system maintenance, we recommend periodic maintenance on the fax server to ensure smooth and efficient operation. The following describes recommended processes for use by experienced system administrators.

Note
Most maintenance tasks require a user to be logged in as `vsifax, root`, or another administrative user.

Purging historical data and maintaining the database files

Regular purging of incoming and outgoing faxes will increase the responsiveness of the clients, which will load and run slowly if the database files become too large. Regular purging will also speed up processes that create the outbound and inbound log reports (`vfxolog` and `vfxilog`, respectively) while preventing file corruption.

Maintaining log files

The process of maintaining the Outbound and Inbound log files begins with the purging of data from the `olog` and `ilog` reports. This is accomplished using the `vfxpurge` command. The `vfxpurge` command will allow you to select the amount of data you want to purge and how much data to retain. Running a purge process nightly using a cron or MS-Schedule job or by using the `vadmind` cron mechanism is recommended.

Maintaining databases

Keeping databases purged can eliminate delays in locating information about sent faxes. If the log files are excessively large, the information can be difficult to find and errors may occur when running the `vfxolog` command.

The process of purging the files should also include periodic file unloading and rebuilding. This will help ensure that the databases contain accurate information, since excessively large database files tend to be more susceptible to corruption.

Rebuilding database files can be performed using a series of VSI-FAX commands either individually, written into a script, or through other automated task managers, such as crontab or MS-Schedule. Sample daily and periodic scripts appear later in this section. The following describes the recommended weekly or monthly process:

1. Stop the VSI-FAX scheduler.
2. Purge old data from the databases.
3. Rebuild the databases.
4. Restart the scheduler.

Note
During the rebuilding process, errors may be displayed that indicate database corruption. This is particularly likely if rebuilding has not been performed recently. Ignore these error messages because the problems they refer to will be repaired during the rebuilding process.

Sample scripts for maintaining databases and files

Scripts can be used nightly, weekly, or once per month depending on the number of faxes being sent and received by your fax server. These scripts are intended for use on Unix servers or with the MKS Toolkit.

Tip
If you are running VSI-FAX on a Windows server without the MKS Toolkit, the scripts can be modified to run correctly by changing each $VSIFAX to %VSIFAX%.

Important
These scripts are examples. They must be modified according to your specific configuration and needs.

Nightly purge script

```
#!/bin/sh
# This example script purges all three logs,
# It retains any information that is 7 days old or less
. /etc/vsifax.sh
vfxpurge -o7
```

Weekly or monthly purge/rebuild script

```
#!/bin/sh
. /etc/vsifax.sh

# Stop the scheduler
vfxsched stop

# Purge the data older than 7 days from the database
vfxpurge -o7

# Rebuild the databases
vfxdb -vf ologatt ologreg ologgrp ologtag ologofn
or
vdbtool rebuild -vf ologatt ologreg ologgrp ologtag ologofn

# Restart the Scheduler
vfxsched start
```

Maintaining VSI-FAX directories

The fax server uses directories to store inbound and outbound faxes and temporary files. Over time, faxes left in these directories will eventually consume excessive amounts of space.

Therefore, we recommend that you check the following directories on a regular basis:

- When the scheduler is idle (no jobs pending), the `$VSIFAX/spool/in` directory should be empty. If TIFF files are found in this directory, a problem occurred while routing an inbound fax to a specified inbox and caused the fax to remain in the in folder. Use `vfxstat` to determine if the scheduler is idle, then remove any files in the directory.
- VSI-FAX uses a temporary directory for various operations, such as storage of pending TIFF files. The directory should be empty when the scheduler is idle. If this directory is not empty, use `vfxstat` to determine if the scheduler is idle, then remove any files in the directory. The location of this directory depends on the operating system of your VSI-FAX server:
    - On Windows platforms, the temporary directory used by VSI-FAX is `$VSIFAX/spool/temp`. If this directory does not exist on the server, the `$TMP` directory will be used instead.
    - On UNIX platforms, the temporary directory used by VSI-FAX is `/tmp`. You can override this setting and select another directory by setting a value for the `$VSITEMP` environment variable.

Important note
Regardless of the platform you are using, you **must** make sure that the VSI-FAX user has enough rights to access the above directories. If this user is unable to read or write files in these directories, the VSI-FAX scheduler will not be able to run.

Debug log files

Debug files are created each time the scheduler is restarted. These files are self-maintaining, and they will not become unreasonably large if the scheduler is restarted periodically. We recommend that the scheduler be restarted once a day to ensure that, along with maintaining the debug log files, any defunct/runaway processes can be managed. This also ensures that the shared memory segments and resources used by VSI-FAX are reset and cleaned, which will help to ensure smooth VSI-FAX operation.

The log file names are numerically incremented each time the scheduler is started, up to the number of files set in the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file, using the `max-debug-log` entry. The current debug files do not have a number designation (fax1). However, as new debug files are created, they will be incremented (fax1-0, fax1-1, fax1-2, etc.) until the maximum number of files are reached.

If the debug option is turned on, the debug log files continue to expand until the scheduler is restarted.

Archiving faxes and maintaining user's inboxes

If you are using VSI-FAX to receive and route inbound faxes, each client user will have an inbox identified by their user name or user ID. All faxes received for a particular user will be routed to that user's inbox, located in the `$VSIFAX/faxq/<user ID>` directory. Every user can save, copy, or delete faxes from their inbox. Faxes that are not routed to individual inboxes are routed to the inbox of user `vsifax`.

To maintain manageable levels of faxes in user inboxes, the VSI-FAX administrator should set up a monthly maintenance cycle or script that checks each user's directory, including user `vsifax`, and deletes any files older than a specified date.

Scheduling periodic fax server maintenance

VSI-FAX provides a mechanism for automatically scheduling periodic fax server maintenance (e.g., database rebuilds, log file purges, etc.). Each periodic event is scripted via an entry in `$VSIFAX/lib/crontab.lst`.

This scripting mechanism is based on the Unix cron function and employs syntax similar to that used in crontab.lst.

See also
Refer to *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation for additional information.

You can also control automatic scheduling of periodic fax server maintenance using the VSI-FAX Server Administration snap-in. Select the fax server node and choose Action > Properties > Maintenance.

Refer to the VSI-FAX Server Administration help for additional information.

Integration Fundamentals

Integration Fundamentals

When most people consider integrating VSI-FAX with another application, they usually want to add one or more of the following capabilities to their existing business application:

- **Send a fax** : Use VSI-FAX to send faxes directly from another application.
- **Receive a fax** : Use VSI-FAX to receive faxes, then hand them to another application for processing.
- **Administration** : Implement programmatic control and maintenance of the VSI-FAX server.

Because sending a fax is by far the most common capability added via integration, this section will focus primarily on that aspect of integration.

The fax envelope

Sending a fax is similar to sending a letter via the postal system. Consider that when you send a letter, you must have at least the following:

- Something to send
- Someone to send it to

Typically, a message is written or typed on a piece of paper and placed inside an envelope. Of course, you can include other items such as brochures, price lists, bills, contracts, etc. In fact, some postal mailings can be rather large and contain many items in the same envelope. Conversely, if your message is brief, you might send a postcard. Regardless of size or complexity, you must have **something** to send.

After you have gathered the items you want to send, placed them in the envelope, sealed it and addressed it to the recipient, you often have several different ways you can get it to the post office. For example, you can take it to your central post office in person or you can drop it in a local mail box and let a mail carrier deliver it to the post office for you. You can even request delivery confirmation.

Similarly, when you send a fax, the minimum amount of information you need is:

- Something to fax
- A recipient (fax number or email address)

As with letters, faxes can contain other items (attachments) or be simple (just a cover page). Once the elements of the fax are defined, it is assembled into a "fax envelope" so that it can be sent. You also have several different ways to get it to the "post office" (i.e., fax server) and you can specify types of confirmation (status).

Let's set aside the analogies and metaphors for a moment and take a look at what fax envelopes really contain:

- **Content** : Fax content includes everything you want to fax to your recipient. It can be a simple text message or multiple files you want to image and send to this person.
- **Recipient information** : This is the person who will receive the fax. At minimum, you must enter a fax number or an email address. However, most users also will include other details such as the recipient's name and company information in order to ensure that the right person gets the fax.
- **Cover page (sender information)**: Most faxes include a cover page. Cover pages are similar to return addressees on letters. They almost always include the sender's information and usually include recipient's addressing information. They can also include short messages. In fact, a fax can consist of only a cover page.
- **Send parameters** : Send parameters are the conditions you specify for sending this fax. For example, this is where you specify that the fax be sent from a specific fax device or sent at a specific time (e.g., delayed send).

Creating the fax envelope

There are two basic underlying methods for creating a fax envelope:

- vfx tags
- XML-F

It is important to understand that **all** VSI-FAX integration techniques build on one of these two basic methods.

vfx tags

vfx tags are the most common way to define a fax envelope. These tags are nothing more than name/value pairs that are passed to the fax server.

Let's consider a simple fax envelope; a local fax number (555-1212) and a simple text file (`hello.txt`) containing the message "Hello, World."

The `tfn` tag specifies the fax number. The actual tag for this fax envelope is:

```
tfn=555-1212
```

The `fll` tag specifies a file attachment. The actual tag for this fax envelope is:

```
fll=hello.txt
```

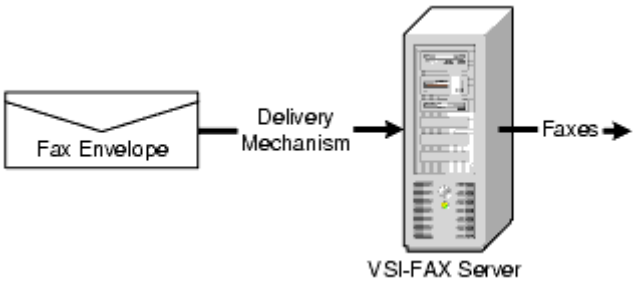
There are many different tags you can use to define the elements of a fax envelope.

XML-F

Extensible Markup Language (XML) is a language specifically designed to share data among applications. Within the entire XML universe are industry-specific specializations. One of these specializations is XML-F. The XML-F specification comprises eight public document types that can be used to define a fax envelope and communicate with a fax server.

Delivering the fax envelope

Once you have defined your fax envelope, you must deliver it to the fax server so that it can be imaged into a fax and sent via one of your fax devices.



Three things are needed to deliver a fax envelope to the fax server:

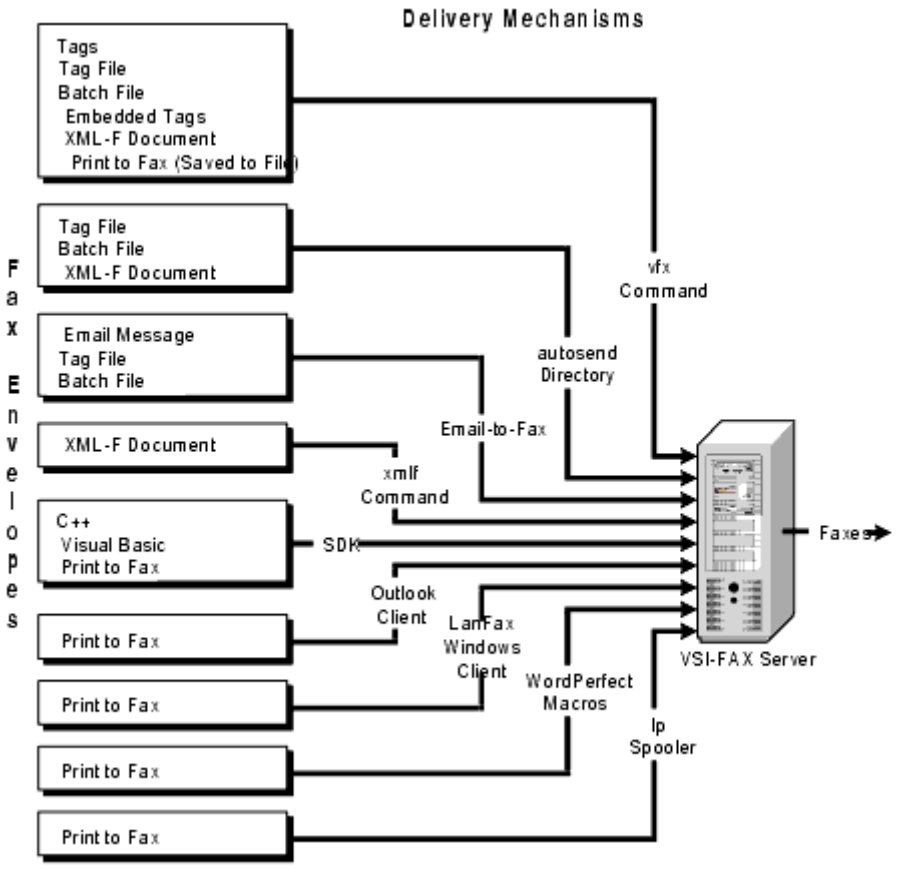
- Fax envelope
- Access to the fax server (host name, IP address, Internet domain, email account)
- VSI-FAX user account

VSI-FAX provides many different delivery mechanisms. In fact, virtually any integration situation will have access to at least one of these delivery mechanisms.

Integration techniques

When you combine a specific way of creating a fax envelope with a specific delivery mechanism, you have a complete fax integration technique.

This figure shows the ways a fax envelope can be created and the delivery mechanisms available for each:



Send integration techniques

Another way to look at integration solutions is to consider a matrix that lists ways to create fax envelopes as rows and delivery mechanisms are columns.

		Delivery Mechanisms								
		vfx Command	autosend Directory	Email-to-Fax	xmlf Command	Fax SDK	Outlook Fax Client	LanFax Windows Client	WordPerfect Macros	lp Spooler
Ways to Create Fax Envelopes	Tags	X								
	Tag Files	X	X	X						
	Batch Files	X	X	X						
	Embedded Tags	X								
	XML-F	X	X		X					

		Delivery Mechanisms								
		vfx Command	autosend Directory	Email-to-Fax	xmlf Command	Fax SDK	Outlook Fax Client	LanFax Windows Client	WordPerfect Macros	lp Spooler
	Document									
	Email Message			X						
	C++					X				
	Visual Basic					X				
	Print to Fax	X				X	X	X	X	X

Each way of creating a fax envelope and each delivery mechanism will be discussed in greater detail elsewhere in the documentation.

Which integration technique is best for me?

As you can see from previous topics, there are many different ways to integrate VSI-FAX into your existing business application. Some integration solutions are better suited to a distributed environment, while others are relatively simple and easy to implement. Still others require prior programming experience.

In order to help you choose the best integration strategy for your needs, consider the following:

- Does your application client/server run on a different network node than the fax server?
- How automated do you need your integration to be?
- Do you require fax status or notification?
- What are your programming skills?
- Is purchasing a new VSI-FAX license an issue?

vfx commands

`vfx` commands are a simple and powerful delivery mechanism. `vfx` is simply a command line utility that provides many options for precisely defining a fax envelope. One of these options is a tag statement (`-t <tag>=<value>`). There are many different tags that can be specified in addition to other `vfx` options.

Advantages

Powerful and flexible. Provides maximum options for creating the fax envelope and full support for all content parameters, send options, fax status and notifications.

Excellent choice if your application can execute external commands and is running locally on the fax server.

It is still an acceptable choice if your application runs remotely (i.e., from another IP address than the fax server). However, you must purchase a VSI-FAX license providing support of Virtual Fax Server and install the Virtual Fax Server on the remote computer or workstation.

Creates a fax request ID you can use to track fax status.

Disadvantages

Additional cost involved with remote integrations-you must purchase a VSI-FAX license providing support of Virtual Fax Server and have a network connection to the fax server.

Poor choice if your application cannot execute external commands.

Ways to create fax envelopes

Tags	Use the `vfx -t` option to supply a series of tag statements (`<tag>=<value>`) on the `vfx` command line. This normally requires that some sort of macro or script be run from inside your application.
Tag files	Create an ASCII text file containing tag statements (`<tag>=<value>`), then pass this "tag file" to the fax server using the `vfx -c <tag_file>` command. Tag files are processed as if the tag statements were entered directly in a command shell.
Batch files	These are similar to tag files, but only appropriate when you want to send multiple personalized faxes to multiple recipients. Batch files are divided into sections. A common section contains information sent to all recipients; recipient sections contain personalized information for that fax recipient.
Embedded tags	These are most often used in print-to-fax situations. The fax server will automatically scan PCL and PostScript files for embedded tags. If it finds them, it will process them as if they were enterd in a command shell. A common way to use embedded tags is to enter embedded tag statements directly into a word processor document, print the document to a PCL or PostScipt file, then pass the file to the fax server as a `vfx` command line argument.
XML-F documents	XML-F provides eight different Document Type Descriptions (DTDs) that describe how to create files you can pass to the fax server and the responses you can expect back from the fax server. XML is a completely open data exchange standard without specific requirements regarding platform or delivery mechanisms. This makes it an excellent choice for heterogeneous environments and large enterprise-wide faxing solutions.
Print-to-fax (saved to file)	Print-to-fax is a simple approach that does not lend itself to full automation. However, it works with almost any application. Open the application, print to a PCL or PostScript file, then pass the file to the fax server as a `vfx` command line argument. However, if you do not specify recipient information with embedded tags, you must supply recipient tags on the `vfx` command line.

See also

Refer to *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation for complete documentation for the `vfx` command.

If you will be creating your fax envelopes via tags, tag files, batch files, embedded tags or print-to-fax, see Using vfx Tags.

If the application you are integrating does not run on the fax server network node see Virtual Fax Server.

autosend directory

The autosend directory is a specific file system directory that is continuously monitored by the fax server. When the fax server finds a tag file, batch file or XML-F document, it uses it to send a fax as if the file had been passed to it via a `vfx` command (See vfx commands).

The location of the autosend directory is `$VSIFAX/autosend`.

Files placed in the autosend directory must have the proper file extension.

- Tag files must have a `.tag` extension
- Batch files must have a `.bat` extension
- XML-F files must have a `.xml` extension

Advantages

Excellent choice for situations where you do not have a network or email connection to the fax server but do have access to the fax server file system (e.g., via NFS).

Disadvantages

You are limited to creating fax envelopes with tag files, batch files or XML-F.

This is a "blind send." Therefore:

- Fax status and notifications are not available
- If errors occur, your fax won't be sent and you will not receive any notification whatsoever that this occurred

Ways to create fax envelopes

Tag files	Create an ASCII text file containing tag statements, then copy or move this "tag file" to the fax server autosend directory (`$VSIFAX/autosend`).
Batch files	Batch files are similar to tag files, but only appropriate when you want to send multiple personalized faxes to multiple recipients. Batch files are divided into sections. A common section contains information sent to all recipients; recipient sections contain personalized information for that fax recipient.
XML-F documents	Create a file according to the XML-F Fax Submit DTD, then move this XML-F document to the fax server autosend directory (`$VSIFAX/autosend`).

See also
If you will be creating your fax envelopes via tags, tag files, batch files, embedded tags or print-to-fax, see Using vfx Tags.

Email-to-fax

When a fax server is networked to a mail server, you can configure a dedicated email account (typically "autofax") for the express purpose of sending faxes. Then you can configure the fax server to periodically poll this email account. When the fax server receives email messages at the "autofax" account, it assumes that they are faxes waiting to be sent and processes the email messages accordingly.

Advantages

Excellent choice for situations where you do not have a network connection to the fax server or have access to the fax server file system but do have an email connection to the fax server via a POP3 mail gateway.

Disadvantages

Your application must be able to send an email message.

You must have an incoming (POP3) Internet mail server, and it must be networked to the fax server.

Ways to create fax envelopes

Email message	If you include a valid fax number or email address on the subject line, the fax server assumes that the remainder of the email message (including any file attachments) is the fax content. The syntax for including a fax number in the email subject line is: `<fax_number>[<subject_text>]` Where `<fax_number>` is a valid fax number of Internet email address and `<subject_text>` is optional subject line text.
Tag and batch files	If you do not include a valid fax number or email address on the subject line, the fax server assumes that the remainder of the email message is a tag or batch file.

See also
Refer to Email-to-fax for a complete discussion of how to set up, configure and use the email-to-fax delivery mechanism

If you will be including tag or batch files in the body of your email message, see Using vfx Tags.

Print-to-fax

Print-to-fax is versatile way to either deliver a fax envelope to the fax server or prepare a fax envelope so that it can be delivered by another means. While this integration technique is hard to fully automate, it can be used to fax-enable virtually any application with printing capabilities.

Advantages

Can be used to fax-enable virtually any application on any platform as long as it can print to file.

If one of the VSI-FAX print drivers is used, users will be prompted to enter send information (e.g., fax number, recipient name) and the fax envelope will be delivered to the fax server.

You can direct your application's output to any PostScript, PCL or ASCII print driver - you are not restricted to using one of the VSI-FAX print drivers.

Disadvantages

Difficult to fully automate.

If you do not use one of the VSI-FAX print drivers, you must get the PostScript, PCL or ASCII file to the fax server - you do not have an integrated delivery mechanism. In most cases, you will need to pass these files to the fax server using `vfx` commands (See The vfx command line).

Ways to create fax envelopes

Tags	If you do not specify send information via embedded commands, you must do so when you deliver the output file to the fax server. In these cases, you must at least supply a fax number using the `fnm` tag.
Template files	You can also use template files in place of tag files or embedded commands to create the fax envelope. This is especially useful for group faxing.

See also
Using vfx Tags
Print-to-fax

xmlf commands

Extensible Markup Language (XML) is emerging as the preferred technique for sharing data among applications. This is especially true for applications that collect and transport data via the Internet.

Advantages

Any XML-aware application can be configured to send and receive XML documents.

XML is inherently platform and transport independent. This is especially useful for integrating existing business applications running on platforms not supported by VSI-FAX (e.g., VMS).

Disadvantages

Fax envelopes must be created using the XML-F Fax Submit documents.

If your application cannot issue external commands, you must provide scripting to issue `xmlf` commands or place the send document in the autosend directory See autosend directory.

Ways to create fax envelopes

XML-F documents are the only way to create fax envelopes for use with the `xmlf` delivery mechanism. The application sends a fax by writing an XML Fax Submit documents and passing it to the fax server via the `xmlf` command See The xmlf command.

See also
Using XML-F

Software Development Kit (SDK)

The VSI Software Development Kit (SDK) provides Component Object Model (COM) classes and sample code that can be used by software developers to integrate fax functionality into Windows applications. These applications can be written using Microsoft Visual Basic 6.0 or Microsoft Visual C++ 6.0 and will run on supported Windows platforms.

Note
With VSI-FAX 5.0, API development has moved to C/C++. This change will not affect your current SDK development. Java, Visual Basic, XML-F, C and C++ continue to be supported in version 5.1 and up.

The C\C++ Client API Reference is in c_api.pdf. in the \docs folder of the VSI-FAX CD-ROM.

Advantages

Experienced C++ and Visual Basic programmers can leverage existing knowledge to create fax integrations.

Disadvantages

Only works on supported Windows platforms. Unix/Linux users generally integrate via `vfx`See vfx commands or `xmlf`See xmlf commands commands rather than at the API level.

Ways to create fax envelopes

C++	Add the fax automation classes to your C++ projects and use them to create custom fax controls and Graphical User Interfaces (GUIs).
Visual Basic	Add fax automation classes to your the Visual Basic projects and use them to create custom fax controls and GUIs.
Print-to-fax	After you have installed the VSI-FAX print driver using the InstallPrinter program, you can send faxes from within any Windows application that supports normal printing. VSI-FAX print driver only images the information a user wants to fax (via the `File > Print...` command). To send a fax, destination information must be supplied. A sample Visual Basic application is provided that receives the imaged file from the print driver and displays a fax form for entering the fax destination information.

See also
VSI Software Development Kit (SDK)

lp spooler

This is essentially another kind of print-to-fax integration See Print-to-fax that uses a custom printer interface script instead of a fax print driver.

Advantages

This technique works on most (but not all) Unix and Linux platforms.

Disadvantages

This technique only works on certain Unix and Linux platforms. You cannot use it on Windows platforms.

Ways to create fax envelopes

The most common method of lp faxing is to use the Unix `lp` command. Typically, the `lp` command accepts several command line options that work well for sending a fax. In order for lp faxing to work correctly, two arguments must be passed to the interface script:

- Fax number
- Name of the file you want to fax

See also
lp Spooler (Unix Only).

Customization Techniques

Customization Techniques

This section describes ways to customize VSI-FAX.

Customizing the fax header

Note
This section does not apply to the Fax on Demand (or FoDC) device. To learn how to customize the page headers of faxes sent using FoDC, please refer to Customizing the header in outgoing faxes, in the Fax on Demand Connector section.

Fax header places information at the top of each faxed page in what would normally be the blank top margin.

A default fax page header is used for all outbound faxes sent by VSI-FAX. This header is a combination of fixed text and variables values:

```
<date> <time> <TSI string> via VSI-FAX Page <Current page number> of <Total number of pages> #%<JobID>
```

By default, the date format is `"%m/%d/%y"`like in 06/22/06, and the time format is `"%I:%M %p"`like in 11:22 AM.

You can customize outbound faxes' page headers at various levels and by various ways in the product:

- In VSI-FAX Server Administration on Windows platforms, you can customize the date and time formats, the advertisement string entry (by default, via VSI-FAX) and the left-justififed part of the header, both at the device's level and in the profiles. For more information, refer to the VSI-FAX Server Administration help.
- In the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` configuration file, you can overwrite the date and time formats by changing the `DateFormat` and `TimeFormat` entries, you can overwrite the advertisement string by changing the `adstring` entries (by default, via VSI-FAX), you can overwrite the left-justified part of the header by changing the `PagehdrString` entry and the right-justified part if the header by changing the `PagehdrEnd` entry. For more information, refer to *Configuration Files* in the Reference Addendum documentation.
- In VSI-FAX Outlook client and LanFax Windows Client, you can overwrite the default fax page header or the custom page header set on the profile and on the device on the server. For more information, refer to the VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client help.
- Setting the `upg` tag to true and using the `pgh` tag, you can overwrite the left-justified part of the header for a single fax request. For more information, refer to *Tag Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation.

Template files

Template files serve as an integration and site customization tool. They allow you to:

- Customize email transport (routing) messages sent by the fax server
- Customize notification email messages sent by the fax server
- Customize the way fax status is displayed with `vfxstat`
- Retrieve fax envelope information from the fax server and use it as part of a group faxing strategy

This topic describes how to use template files for these purposes.

See also

See Customizing notification email messages for additional information about customizing notification email messages.

File structure and syntax

Template files can be plain ASCII text, PostScript, or PCL files. They typically contain a mixture of plain text and tags. When the fax server processes a template file, it populates any tags it finds in the template file with either the current value for the tag or default value defined in the template file.

The default value is used only if a current value for that tag is not defined via some other method (e.g., specified on the command line, in a tag file, or by embedded tag).

It is this conditional behavior (i.e., use the current value or use the default value) that makes template files especially flexible. Once they are created, they can be shared and re-used throughout your site.

The syntax for defining a tag inside a template file is:

`${<tag>[,[<max>].[<length>]][:<default>]}`

Where:

`<tag>`	Tag name.
`,[<max>].[<length>]`	Optional length statement. Tag values exceeding `<max>` are truncated to that value by removing characters from the left of the value; tag values shorter than `<length>` are made that length by appending trailing spaces to the right of the value
`<default>`	Optional default value for the tag.

Consider the following example send-notify template:

```
Your fax request ${seq} to ${tnm:<unknown>} at ${tfn}
 was sent at ${sti} with a result of ${rrs}.

 Fax info:
 # pages : ${npg}
 memo : ${ntf}
```

The first line contains a synopsis of the fax request status, comprising the fax request ID (`seq`) tag, the recipient name (`tnm`) tag, recipient fax number (`tfn`) tag, send time (`sti`) tag, and the fax request result code description (`rrs`) tag. If the `tnm` tag has a current value, that value is used. If `tnm` has not been defined, the default value, unknown, is used.

The remainder of the message includes the total number of pages (`npg`) tag and contents of the note file as defined by the `ntf` tag.

Special capabilities and limitations

When working with template files, be aware of the following special capabilities and limitations:

- Template files must reside in the `$VSIFAX/lib/templates` directory. Template files in other directories cannot be used by the system.
- The note file (`ntf`) tag is special. If specified in a template file, the content of that file is inserted into lines immediately following the `ntf` reference.
- If a tag is specified without a default value and that tag is empty (i.e., it has no associated value), an empty string is output.
- If the `<max>` value is greater than the `<length>` value, it is set to `<length>`.
- If a template file is specified and cannot be found, the default message will be silently used.
- The `vinfo templates` command lists all template files in the `$VSIFAX/lib/templates` directory.

Customizing email transport (routing) messages

When the fax server routes a fax to a user's email inbox, it does so by creating a short email message and including the fax as a TIFF file attachment.

The default email transport message shows the sender as VSI-FAX server. The subject line shows the total number of pages in the fax and the originating fax number (i.e., TSI string). The body of the message looks like this:

```
ID: 16175
clientid : jsmith
TSI : 408 270 9330
rcvd at : 2000/04/13 10:22:59
# pages : 1
```

To customize all email transport messages sent by the fax server:

1. Create your template file.
2. Place the template file in the `$VSIFAX/lib/templates` directory.
3. Add this entry to the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` configuration file:

```
[DEVICE:sm]
template=<my_template.tpl>
```

Where `<my_template.tpl>` is the template file you want to use for your email transport messages.

Customizing vfxstat output

You can use template files to customize `vfxstat` status reports by specifying a valid template using the `-T` option as follows:

```
vfxstat -T <template_file> <req_ID>
```

Consider the following sample template file that could be used to customize `vfxstat` reports:

```
Fax request : ${seq}
Num pages : ${npg}
Result : ${rrs}

To name : ${tnm,20.20} From name : ${fnm,20}
To company : ${tco,20.20} From company : ${fco,20}
To fax number : ${tfn,20.20} From fax number : ${ffn,20}
```

Notice the use of length statements to ensure a pleasing tabular report layout.

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting

This section describes common problems that you may encounter while installing, configuring or using VSI-FAX. If you do not find your problem described in this section, try to identify it before you contact Esker for help.

Before calling support

Have the following information ready when you call Esker Support:

- All hardware components, including brand names and model numbers of the host system and equipment associated with the fax modem
- All applications and third party device drivers associated with the system
- Modem type
- Serial port (internal, serial card, etc.)
- Cabling
- Operating system
- VSI-FAX release, serial number and build number (enter `vfxsched -V`)
- Application program that caused the error
- Complete description of problem
- Specific steps to recreate the problem
- Any error messages, exactly as they appear

Putting the scheduler in debug mode

Putting the scheduler in debug mode is one of the first things you should do when you encounter any problem.

1. Stop the scheduler
2. Edit the `[VFXSCHED]` section of the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file by making the following change:

   ```
   Debug=On
   ```
3. Restart the Scheduler.

The data is written to the following log files in the `$VSIFAX/spool/logs` directory:

`fax1`	Default fax log
`lb`	Loopback FIM log
`vrsched`	Scheduler log
`vxmld`	TCP/IP log
`vnetfax`	Imaging and autosend log

These log files are incremented each time the scheduler is restarted. For example, these files may be used if you are dialing but the faxes fail. You can then put the scheduler in debug mode, try to re-send the fax, and view the default fax log (i.e.,`fax1`).

When you no longer need debug on, edit the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file and change the `Debug=` setting to `off`.

Device problems

To keep the fax server working properly, it is important to know when the system is exhibiting a problem and the best way to recover from an error. Common errors are `Modem Server Keeps Dying` and `Max NoDials Reached`. This error may be caused when a phone line fails, when problems occur with a PBX, and/or when a modem fails to respond.

VSI-FAX has the ability to send an email message or other notification when a modem has stopped working. A stop-notify script added to the system will notify a user or system administrator that a modem has stopped working. The fax server can also be set up with a start and stop notification script showing when the server is started or stopped. This can be used to notify a user or system administrator that the server is running or, in case of an error, how long the server has been down.

When the script runs, it will check to see if a `tmp` file exists. This `tmp` file will contain a value that corresponds to the number of times the software has attempted to restart the FIM. If the value is three, the script will send a fatal mail message to the specified user. If the value in the `tmp` file is less than three, the script will restart the FIM.

DID fax modem support

To determine the version number of a modem that is currently being used by VSI-FAX, examine the log file located in the `$VSIFAX/spool/logs` directory. The file is normally called `fax1` for the first device, `fax2` for the second device, etc. The log file will contain entries like these:

MTYPE	:	7.000	:	Modem manufacturer	:	MULTI-TECH
MTYPE	:	8.000	:	Modem model	:	MT1932ZDX
MTYPE	:	8.000	:	Firmware version	:	0115

Runaway processes (Unix)

VSI-FAX uses several processes that run during normal VSI-FAX operation. These processes should be self-maintaining and will need attention only if the server begins to exhibit abnormal behavior, such as failing to restart after it is stopped.

Runaway processes frequently cause this type of behavior. To identify any runaway VSI-FAX processes, stop the scheduler and use the command:

```
ps -ef | grep vsifax
```

Then, use the `kill` command to terminate any processes shown.

Loading media error

Problem

Mount could not mount `/cdrom` : no such file or directory (error 2)

Solution

The `/cdrom` directory is the mount point for the mount command. This error message will occur if the `/cdrom` directory does not exist. Use the Unix `mkdir` command to create the directory and try the mount command again. An alternate mount point could be the `/mnt` directory which should exist.

Installation errors

Problem

With a Dialogic Diva Server fax board (formerly Eicon fax board), all lines can submit, but only one line can receive.

Solution

Launch the Diva Server driver configuration tool using the `/usr/lib/opendiva/divas/Config` command. Set Capi call distribution policy (group optimization) to "off (broadcast incoming to all applications)".

Problem

Fax device is shown as `Initializing` or is set to `Not Running`.

Solution

The VSI-FAX scheduler executes one Fax Interface Module (FIM) process for each fax device on the system. The `Initializing` or `Not Running` state reported most often is due to the failure of the FIM to successfully initialize the modem, or an inability to communicate with the modem.

Verify the following:

- The fax modem is powered on.
- The serial modem cable is correct for the specific system.
- The FIM process has exclusive use of the serial port and that no other processes are currently running on the serial port. This includes disabling the port on systems using a serial port manager.
- The serial port permissions are rw-rw-rw-(666).
- The terminal server serial port for Ethernet terminal servers is set to support full modem control signals and software flow control, in addition to being set up to accept host system `stty` configuration.

VSI-FAX includes a utility program that allows you to open the serial port and establish communication with the fax modem. The program is called `vtalk` and is located in the `$VSIFAX/lbin` directory. For example:

```
vtalk -c -v /dev/tty1A
```

This program will allow you to troubleshoot serial communication with the fax modem. Once connected, you will not see a prompt or any other indications that you have successfully opened the serial port. Start by entering the `AT&F` modem reset command. You should then receive a response of `OK` assuming that you are successfully communicating with the fax modem. Next try dialing out using the fax modem to determine if the modem is actually responding to commands:

```
ATDT<fax number>
```

To exit the program, press `CTRL-\`.

Problem

Error message: `Cannot Login to Server`

Solution

This message is displayed when you execute any command that requires a response from the fax server.

The fax scheduler may not be running. You can confirm this with the following command:

```
vfxstat -r
```

```
Scheduler is not running
```

One of the scheduler's Unix server processes may have stopped servicing requests. Stop and restart the fax scheduler to resolve this problem.

```
vfxsched restart
```

Communications and modem problems

Problem

Permissions on the port keep changing.

Solution

This is due to another process attempting to use the port, and this causes failures as the two programs contend for access to the device. VSI-FAX requires exclusive access to the serial device used to communicate with the fax modem.

Most commonly, this is due to a `getty` command attempting to start a login on the port. This must be disabled permanently. Although methods for doing this vary from machine to machine, we will detail some common procedures here.

Note
You must be in root to complete these procedures and you usually have to edit the ownership and permissions on the port one final time once you've disabled the `gett y`.

Platform	Method
SCO Unix	Disable the getty on the port ttyXX by entering `disable ttyXX`. This permanently turns off `getty` access to the port, leaving it free for VSI-FAX.
System V Release 2 and 3	The `/etc/inittab` file contains a list of all programs that are run automatically, and this includes all the getty entries. One line in this file mentions the tty that is of interest to you. This line must have its third field changed from `respawn` to `off`. Once this file is saved, run `init q` to make the changes take effect.
System V Release 4	These machines use a `ttymon` process that monitors each port and automatically runs a login when a connection is established. You must use your system administration facilities to ensure that no activity is undertaken on your fax device port.

Note
Intel-based machines usually store their per-port getty information in two places. This means that changes `/etc/inittab` are lost when the kernel is rebuilt. Look for the `getty` line in the file, `/etc/conf/cf.d/init.base`, or in all the files in the `/etc/conf/init.d/` directory. Make the change in `/etc/inittab` plus the appropriate `/etc/conf file`, and run the `init q` command. A kernel rebuild is not necessary.

A rogue process may be running on the port. Recall that VSI-FAX must have exclusive control of the port to which the modem is connected. One way of detecting rogue processes is by the use of the `ps` and `grep` commands:

```
# ps -ef | grep ttyXX
```

Many operating systems provide a program that helps you track down processes that are using any given file, and you can use it to find which process is using the device. The `/etc/fuser` (file-user) command takes a list of filenames and searches through kernel memory and reports the process ID of any program using that file. Once the PID is given, run `ps -ef <PID>` to identify what the process is.

Problem

The fax modem answers calls but terminates during negotiation.

Solution

This could be a compatibility issue with the sending fax machine and the fax modem's firmware. Try isolating the problem to a specific fax machine, which may then require an upgrade of the modem's firmware.

Problem

Log files display time-out errors even though the full document was received at the remote site.

Solution

The fax modem will attempt to send the same page up to a total of three times. If the remote site has a thermal fax machine, the portions of the page that were successfully received at the remote fax machine will appear, but unless the remote fax machine responds with a positive acknowledgment, the local fax modem will reject the fax attempt up to a total of three times. This condition could be caused by transmission errors, or firmware incompatibility between the fax modem and the remote fax machine. It could also mean that the Unix serial port's software flow control is not functioning correctly and data is being lost between the FIM software and the fax modem. The acknowledgments from the remote fax machine received by the fax modem are not making it back to the fax software.

Problem

The received fax transmission speed is no greater than 4800bps.

Solution

The dial line may be contributing to a high degree of errors.

The transmitting fax machine may be limited to or manually configured to transmit at a rate lower than 9600 BPS.

Problem

Every call terminates with `NO ANSWER`.

Solution

Verify that you are calling a fax machine. Do your initial fax testing in the same room as the modem so you can hear the call progress yourself. An answer of "Hello" usually means a human has picked up the line.

Verify that the proper dialing codes are used (e.g., some telephone systems require the prefix of 9 to reach an outside line). To check, turn debug on, then view fax1 (or your default) to see what the dialed number is being converted to.

Problem

A loud beep is heard about every two seconds on a fax call.

Solution

This is normal. Outgoing fax modems always emit a CNG tone about every two seconds to tell the recipient that the caller is a fax machine and not a person. This can be disabled by adding the entry `speaker-mode=off` to the Devices section of the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file.

Problem

Modem server keeps dying.

Solution

This problem could be due to serial port problems, serial port configuration issues, cable problems, unsupported modem issues or other modem problems.

VSI-FAX only supports fax Class 2 or Fax Class 2.0 modems. Fax Class 1 modems are not supported.

VSI-FAX provides the `vtalk` utility for assisting in troubleshooting modem problems.

The `vtalk` utility is located in the `$VSIFAX/lbin` directory.

```
vtalk -c -v /dev/tty1A
```

After the port opens successfully you can enter modem AT commands

ATE1	This enables echo responses from the modem. The modem should return `OK`.
ATZ	This is the modem reset command. The modem should return `OK`.
AT&F&W	This is the modem load factory defaults and write to the profile command. The modem should return `OK`.
AT+FCLASS=?	This is the modem command to query the supported fax classes. The modem will return `2` for Class 2 support, `Class 2.0` for Class 2.0 support and `1` for Class 1 support. Other values include `0`, which is data mode, and `8`, which is voice mode.

Press `CTRL-\` to exit.

If the modem did not respond check the serial port configuration,+ serial port cable and power cycle the modem then try the `vtalk` utility again. If the modem does not appear to support Class 2 or Class 2.0, visit our web site www.esker.com for the list of supported modems.

Emails problems

This section contains a troubleshooting procedure to help in solving common problems.

Activating the traces

When there is an issue with the emails, the first thing to do is to activate the debug and check the contents of the generated log:

1. Edit the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file and add `debug=on` in the [VMAIL] section.
2. Restart the scheduler to apply the change.
3. Send a fax on the sm device (email fax) or send a fax on the loopback device in order to generate an email notification.
4. Get the vmaild log in the %VSIFAX/Spool/logs folder and have a look at its content.

   Below is an example of a vmaild log when it is not possible to connect to the mail server:

```
10/04 17.22.25.437: vmaild daemon version 6.1
10/04 17.22.25.437: Build info = Windows W32 5 00 586
10/04 17.22.25.437: System = LY-5
10/04 17.22.25.437: Debug mode = on
10/04 17.22.25.437: SMTP server = mail.example.com
10/04 17.22.25.437: ------------------------------------------------------------
10/04 17.22.25.437: fifo: [8] start processing
10/04 17.39.04.781: fifo: [1] send mailfile mime00232aa.txt to doc@example.com
10/04 17.39.04.781: Send mime00232aa.txt to doc@example.com
10/04 17.39.04.812: Cannot connect: No error
```

For additional information, the `debug` flag located in the `vsisvr.ini`, under the [VMAIL] section, can be set to 2. Then, the SMTP commands will be shown in the logs and the issue will be easier to troubleshoot.

1. Edit the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file and add `debug` =2 in the [VMAIL] section.
2. Restart the scheduler to apply the change.
3. Get the vmaild log in the `%VSIFAX%/Spool/logs` folder and have a look at its content.

   See also

   For detailed information about the SMTP protocol and its commands, refer to SMTP Protocol.

The Vmime file

When VSI-FAX attempts to send an email, two files are created and can be retrieved for further troubleshooting: these files are in the %VSIFAX%/spool/mail/failed folder:

- mimeXXXXXaa.txt: contains information for the SMTP protocol: From, subject, content...
- mimeXXXXXaa.adr: contains the recipient email address

Below is a sample mimeXXXXaa.txt of a fax status notification:

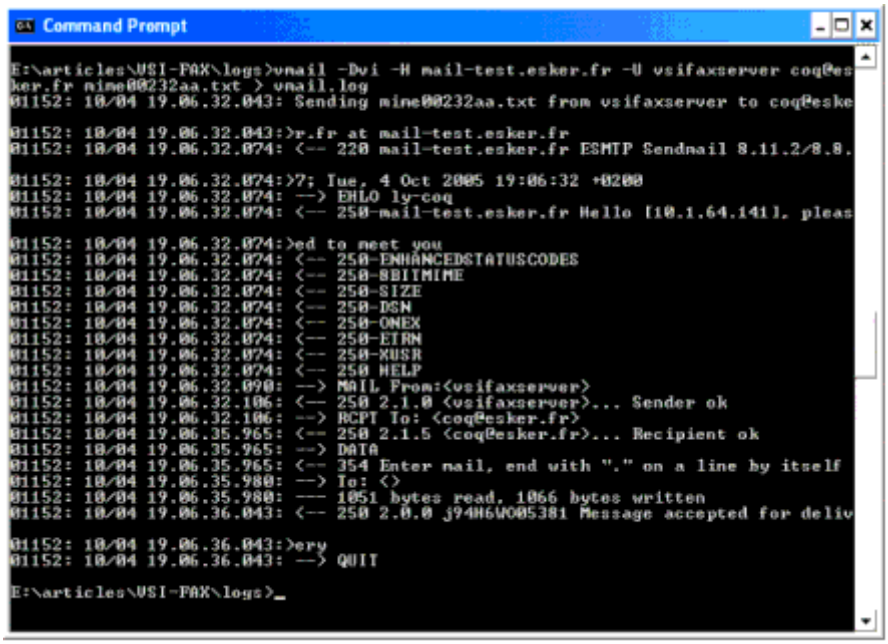
```
From: doc@example.com
Subject: VSI-FAX job 1151: status NORMAL
Mime-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: multipart/mixed; boundary="PART-BOUNDARY.vsifax.boundary.vsifax"

--PART-BOUNDARY.vsifax.boundary.vsifax
Content-Type: text/plain
Status for VSI-FAX fax job: 1151
Submitted by: vsifax E-mail : doc@example.com
Submit time : 10/04 17:38 Queue : lb
Result : done Status : Normal
To name : <none> From name : VSIFAX Admin
To company : <none> From company: Example
To fax # : 1111 From fax # : 111111
To voice # : <none> From voice #: 1234
Subject : <none>
Num dialed : 1111
Cover : 1 pg default
Total pgs : 1 pg (actual 2)
Attempt Send-Time Result CSI
------- ----------- ------------------ ----------------
1 10/04 17:39 Normal Example Doc
--PART-BOUNDARY.vsifax.boundary.vsifax-
```

The vmail utility

A vmail command line is actually executed when VSI-FAX has to send an email. This tool can be used manually:

1. Launch a command prompt and issue a Cd command to %VSIFAX%/lbin.
2. Type "vmail -?" to know the possible options.
3. First, do a "vmail -W" to get the sender name and mail server name used in the SMTP protocol (retrieved from the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file).

4. Then, you can do a "vmail -Dvi <email_address> <mimeXXXXXaa.txt>" to resubmit failed email. The email address should be the one from the mimeXXXXXaa.adr file. This will show the SMTP commands sent and received from the mail server to send the email.



Comments: This email submission was successful. Here is the detail of the communication:

1. We can successfully connect to the SMTP server as we get the "220 mail-test.esker.fr..." message.
2. Then, the mail server provides some information in answer to the EHLO command
3. We send the MAIL from command with the sender name specified in the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file and this sender is accepted by the mail server (Sender ok)
4. We send the RCPT to command with the recipient email address and this address is accepted by the mail server (Recipient ok)
5. Finally, the data is passed to the mail server (subject, content) and the message is delivered by the mail server

Common issues

Sender denied

The mail server can reject the sender for security reasons (to avoid the spam for instance). In this case, you can test with some other sender (-U option) and then modify accordingly the sender flag in the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file once you have a proper sender.

Some mail servers automatically add their domain name to the sender name passed in the MAIL From command if the sender does not have a domain ("sender" becomes "sender@mail-server-domain.com").

However, some mail servers do not do this operation automatically and you need to a fully qualified sender name such as "sender@mail-server-domain.com".

SMTP authentication

Some servers require an SMTP authentication to be used as email gateways. The SMTP authentication is supported with VSI-FAX from version 4.2.2b and on.

See also
Refer to SMTP Authentication for the steps to follow to configure the SMTP authentication on the VSI-FAX server.

No outbound fax notification when the imaging fails

Problem : When the imaging fails, no .tif file is generated and the "`sfx`" notification is not sent.

In VSI-FAX version 6.0 and on, an email is also sent if no .tif file is generated. Then, you know that the fax has failed.

No inbound fax notification for some faxes

Problem : When routing the inbound faxes as pdf files (`fmt-pdf` value for the `rfm` tag), the conversion from .tif to .pdf can fail for some specific inbound faxes with low resolution. When this conversion fails, no email is sent to the user and the inbound fax does not reach the mail box of the user.

In VSI-FAX version 6.0 and on, the received .tif files are pre-processed before being converted to .pdf in order to avoid conversion errors.

Printing problems

Problem

The `vfxprint` output to an HP LaserJet printer is unreadable.

Solution

The PCL output from `vfxprint` requires an eight-bit binary interface with no translation of any kind by the printer driver. This is usually controlled by the `stty` command, and features such as parity, tab expansion, or NL-to-CRLF translation will play havoc with the binary data. A completely raw mode must be selected. Tracking this down usually requires system administration experience, but there are steps you can take to fix this problem.

The line printer spooler system provides a shell script, specifically an interface script, that is responsible for routing the data to the printer. The `lp` command has the `-o` argument that permits the passing of arbitrary options to this script, and many standard interfaces support some way of selecting this raw mode.

While debugging the lp spooler interface scripts is well beyond the scope of this document, users with administrative experience can usually look at the script and find the way to do it. Look for raw or graphics options that directly or indirectly set the`-opost stty` option.

The normal interface scripts are stored under the `/usr/spool/lp` directory, in a sub directory that depends on the operating system version. Before System V Release 3.2, the `interface` sub-directory contained the scripts, and after 3.2 they are kept in the `admins/lp/interfaces` subdirectory.

Some systems support the use of the `lp -oraw` command to indicate raw data being sent to the printer.

Miscellaneous problems

Problem

A received fax appears stretched or expanded.

Solution

The original fax was probably sent in standard resolution mode and should be resent in fine resolution mode. For example:

```
vfx -n555-1212 -E fine file.tif
```

Problem

Accentuated characters are deleted from the document. For example, you submit a TXT file to be sent by fax and some accentuated characters are missing from the resulting TIFF file.

Solution

You have to change the symset on the VSI-FAX server. For this, run the **lib/fxpcl/symset 0n** (zero n) command on the VSI-FAX server.

Formatter errors

Problem

PostScript documents will not fax.

Solution

The PostScript language is highly standardized, but there is enough deviation from the norm that compatibility problems still arise. The first test is always to send the document to a real PostScript printer. If the document fails to print there, the VSI-FAX PostScript formatter will normally not process it properly.

The most common cause of these problems is an improperly configured or invalid PostScript driver in the application software, or the use of Level 2 options. The VSI-FAX PostScript formatter only supports PostScript Level 1 files.

Most new printers support the more recent Level 2 language as defined by Adobe, and their drivers often use these additional features. Some drivers can have Level 2-specific features disabled, so select this if available. We have seen the least amount of compatibility problems with the Apple LaserWriter driver.

Alternatively, you can specify a file type of PS2, which will use the Ghostscript formatter, which supports PostScript level 2.

Before calling technical support, have the exact name and version of the application that generated the PostScript code. You may be asked to send a copy of the file that produces the error so we can reproduce the problem in-house. Do not discard your test programs.

Problem

The quality of halftones in gray scale faxes is poor.

Solution

If you are not satisfied with the quality of halftones in your faxes, you can choose to either change the rendering engine (by default a 300 dpi write-white engine) or parameters used by the Ghostscript engine provided with VSI-FAX. To do so, you must open the **gs_init.ps** configuration file and adjust the settings in the Rendering parameters section. Refer to the related section in the Ghostscript documentation for more information.

These adjustments can require some trial and error, but it usually involves reducing the halftone frequency.

Note
Altering these settings is **not** recommended unless you are an advanced Ghostscript user.

Problem

Lines vary in size.

Solution

This is usually caused by the PostScript driver not rounding to device space coordinates properly. At 300 dots per inch, it is hard to see the difference between a 2-pixel-wide line and one that is 3 pixels wide. However, at 200 dpi, a 1-pixel-wide line looks different. Some common programming techniques completely eliminate these resolution-dependent artifacts, but some drivers choose not to use them. Report this to your application vendor.

Problem

Fax fails with the reason for failure `BADIMG`.

Solution

This error condition indicates that the file submitted for faxing could not be imaged properly.

It can also be caused by a corrupt input file or submitting an input file that is not in a supported file format.

VSI-FAX supports ASCII, TIFF, PostScript Level 1 and 2, PDF and PCL input files.

VSI-FAX uses the following conversion applications for submitting input files to the appropriate formatter. All of the conversion applications are located in the `$VSIFAX/lbin` directory.

`pcltotif`	This application converts PCL or ASCII files into TIFF files.
`eptotif`	This application converts Epson format files into TIFF files.
`gstotif`	This application converts PDF and PostScript level 1 and 2 files into TIFF files.

The following example shows a method of using the conversion application directly to image the input file rather than submitting the input file from the `vfx` command line or from one of the other fax submittal methods in VSI-FAX. The example filename `file.*` should be replaced with your input file.

For PCL or ASCII files

```
pcltotif -o /tmp/test.tif -E fine file.pcl
```

If successful, this will create the `/tmp/test.tif` output file or return error messages if unsuccessful.

For Epson format files

```
eptotif -o /tmp/test.tif -E fine file.ep
```

If successful, this will create the `/tmp/test.tif` output file or return error messages if unsuccessful.

For TIFF files

```
vtifftool convert -o /tmp/test.tif -E fine file.tif
```

If successful, this will create the `/tmp/test.tif` output file or return error messages if unsuccessful.

Problem

Fax fails with the reason for failure SCHERR.

Solution

VSI-FAX scheduler processes have experienced a permissions problem or a scheduler problem.

To resolve SCHERR conditions, restart the VSI-FAX scheduler in debug mode. After you recreate the problem, go to the `$VSIFAX/spool/logs` directory and look for error messages in the `vrsched` and `vnetfax` debug logs. Submit the debug logs to Esker Technical Support if required.

Problem: GNU Ghostscript 7.07: Unrecoverable error

If you encounter the following type of Ghostscript error when converting PDF files into TIFF:

```
D:\>vfx -o PurchaseOrder10336898.tif PurchaseOrder10336898.pdf
```

```
vfx: error imaging envelope: C:\Program Files\VSI-FAX\FaxServer\vsinet\netspool\2820-735-1.pdf: gstotif: GNU Ghostscript 7.07: Unrecoverable error, exit code 1
```

Solution

The solution is to upgrade the Ghostscript 7.07 version used by VSI-FAX to get the Ghostscript latest fixes. Ghostscript versions superior than 7.07 cannot be delivered with external products like VSI-FAX but you may install them by yourself. For the detailed procedure, refer to Updating Ghostscript on a Windows platform or Updating Ghostscript on a Unix platform.

Using vfx Tags

Using vfx Tags

This section discusses using `vfx` tags to fax-enable your existing business applications.

Tags are always three-character mnemonics for the function they accomplish. For example, the `tfn` tag is used to define the fax number, the `tgf` tag is used to define a tag file, etc.

The vfx command line

The easiest way to use tags is to include them with a `vfx` command by using the `-t` option. For example, to fax a text file (`hello.txt`) containing the message "Hello, World" to local fax number 555-1212, you would enter in a command shell at the fax server:

```
vfx -t tfn=555-1212 -t fll=hello.txt
```

Passing tags to the fax server using `vfx` commands is a good integration technique for situations where your existing business application can issue external commands.

See also
Refer to *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation for complete `vfx` command documentation.

vfx tags

`vfx` tags are used to pass fax envelope information to the fax server (refer to The fax envelope for more information). You can use any of the following on a `vfx` command line, as well as in tag files and batch files:

Tag	Description
`aco`	From area code
`ad1 - ad3`	To address lines 1 thru 3
`arc`	Automatically archive sent faxes
`cli`	Client ID
`cvr`	Cover page
`dtf`	Custom date format
`fa1 - fa3`	From address lines 1 thru 3
`fcn`	From country name
`fco`	From company name
`fcv`	File conversion options
`fdl`	Local folder
`fds`	Server folder
`fem`	From email address
`ffn`	From fax number
`fll`	Local file attachment

Tag	Description
fls	Server file attachment
fnm	Custom from name
fpg	TIFF file attachment page range
fpl	File attachment page size
frs	File attachment send resolution
ftp	File attachment type
fvl	Local overlay
fvn	From voice number
fvs	Server overlay
gal	Group name
gnp	Group notify procedure
grp	Group file
icc	Internal CC with cover page
lcr	Allow least cost routing
lnd	Sent fax page orientation
lnp	Launch notify procedure
mad	From email address
ncc	Internal CC without cover page
not	Send notify mode
ntx	Note text
ofn	File attachment original path
oui	Override USERINFO
ovl	Local overlay
ovs	Server overlay
pal	Person alias
pgh	Custom page header for a given fax request (this does not apply to the FoDC device)
pgl	Sent fax page size
pre	From fax number prefix
que	Fax queue
res	Send resolution
ret	Retry strategy
sig	Signature file
stm	Send time
sub	Subject
suf	From fax number suffix
tco	To company name
tfn	To fax number
tg1 - tg4	User from tags 1 through 4
tgf	Tag file
tin	Custom to information
tmf	Custom time format
tnm	To name
tnp	Transmit notify procedure
tsi	Transmitting station ID
tti	Transmitting terminal ID

Tag	Description
tvn	To voice number
udf	User defaults

Issue the following command in the command shell to obtain the compelete list of valid envelope tags:

```
vfx -help tags
```

Tag files

Tag files are ASCII text files that contain one vfx tag per line. For example, you could fax the same message as the previous example by saving this information to tag file hello.tag:

```
tfn=555-1212
fll=hello.txt
```

To send the fax, you would pass the tag file to the fax server using the -t tgf=<tag_file> option as follows:

```
vfx -t tgf=hello.tag
```

You could easily add a few more tags to include a "classic" cover page (cvr tag) with a subject line (sub tag), recipient name (tnm tag) and recipient company name (tco tag). That tag file would look like this:

```
cvr=classic
sub=Sample Hello World Fax

fll=hello.txt

tfn=555-1212
tnm=Billy Bear
tco=Wild Mountain Resorts
```

Tag files are especially useful for situations where your existing business application can write output to a file but cannot issue external commands. However, you must write the script that passes the tag file to the fax server. This is typically done using vfx commands, placing the file in the autosend directory or emailing the file to the fax server.

Tag files with multiple files or recipients

When a tag file defines more than one file to be included with the fax (e.g., using multiple fll tags) or defines more than one recipient (e.g, using multiple tfn tags), the tag file must be constructed in a particular order, or that fax will not be sent as intended.

Important
Tag files have one important limitation: they cannot send different faxes to different recipients. You can send the same fax to more than one recipient (i.e., send a group fax) but the faxes will be identical. If you need to send different faxes to different recipients, consider using a batch file.

See also
See Advanced Group Faxing for additional information.

- Each recipient block must start with a tfn tag. All subsequent information (e.g., name, company name, etc.) is assumed to be for that recipient until the next tfn tag is encountered.
- Each file inclusion block must start with one of the following tags:

Tag	Description
fdl	Local folder
fds	Server folder

Tag	Description
fll	Local file attachment
fls	Server file attachment

All subsequent file-specific information is assumed to be for that recipient until the next file inclusion tag is encountered.

Let's extend our previous example even further by including more than one file and sending this identical fax to more than one recipient.

```
cvr=classic
sub=Sample Hello World Fax

fll=hello.txt
fvl=hello.tif

tfn=555-1212
tnm=Billy Bear
tco=Wild Mountain Resorts

tfn=556-1313
tnm=Rocky Racoon
tco=Big River Ski Lodge

tfn=557-1414
tnm=Kyle Koala
tco=Down Under Adventures
```

This tag file will use a classic cover page with the subject line, "Sample Hello World Fax." This cover page will be populated with the name and company name of each recipient (defined with the `tnm` and `tco` tags in each recipient block, respectively).

The fax will comprise a local file attachment (`hello.txt`) and a local overlay file (`hello.tif`). Everything but the cover page will be identical for all fax recipients.

Here documents

"Here" documents are special cases within tag files and batch files (See Batch files) where a local file, instead of being referenced externally, is actually embedded directly into the tag or batch file.

"Here" documents can be embedded using any of these `vfx` tags:

Tag	Description
fll	Local file attachment
ntf	Note file (memo)

The normal way to use any of these tags is to supply an external file specification (full path and file name you want to include). When you define a "here" document, you simply define an internal area of the tag or batch that contains the same information. Consider this example:

```
fll=<<EOF
Hello, World.
EOF
```

Instead of the `fll` tag referencing an external text file (containing the message, `Hello, World.`), the message is directly embedded using the `<<EOF` and `EOF` statements to define the area between them as a "here" document.

Tip

You are not limited to using End of File (EOF) character strings to define your "here" documents. You can use any character sequence you like, provided that it does not contain spaces and is not used in the body of your "here" document. In fact, you will need to use a different character sequence if your "here" document contains an EOF statement within it.

"Here" documents provide additional flexibility when you need to fax-enable an application that can write output to a file but cannot issue external commands.

Embedded commands

Embedded commands

You can embed `vfx` commands in ASCII text, PCL, or PostScript files, then pipe or redirect them to the `vfx` command as standard input (`STDIN`). These embedded commands are processed as if you had entered them directly on the command line.

Embedded commands are typically used to:

- Embed images, such as company logos, directly into a file you want to fax
- Embed tags that contain fax envelope information See The fax envelope directly into a file you want to fax

Embedded commands are especially useful when integrators are programmatically generating a faxable file directly from an existing business application. These embedded commands allow you to create the entire fax (including the fax envelope information) and hand it to the fax server for sending-no additional formatting or intervention is required.

Embedded images

There are two embedded commands available for embedding images into the file you want to fax:

- @+IMAGE
- @+INCLUDE

The `@+IMAGE` command embeds the specified image file behind the text while the `@+INCLUDE` command embeds the specified image file in line with the text.

The `@+INCLUDE` embedded image command cannot be passed through `STDIN` whereas the `@+IMAGE` embedded image command can be used with or without passing through `STDIN`.

@+IMAGE

The `@+IMAGE` embedded image command allows you to include TIFF files, like your company logo or a personal signature, in a faxable document. Furthermore, you can control the exact position of each embedded image on the faxed document. The image is included behind the text.

Note
Using the `@+IMAGE` embedded image command requires a good working knowledge of the format to modify.

The basic syntax for an embedded image statement is:

```
@+IMAGE[<file_name.tif>]
```

Where `<file_name.tif>` is the name of your TIFF file.

Image positioning

The default location for embedded images is the current location of the embedded image statement in the text, PCL, or PostScript file. In other words, if you placed your embedded image in the middle of a text, PCL, or PostScript file, the top-left corner of that embedded image would appear in the middle of the faxed document behind the text.

While this may be sufficient for some applications, in most cases more precise positioning is required. This is accomplished by including position coordinates in your embedded image statement as follows:

```
@+IMAGE[<filename.tif>;x=<pos>{i|cm};
y=<pos>{i|cm};
```

```
ax=<pos>{i|cm};
ay=<pos>{i|cm}]
```

Where (ax,ay) are absolute coordinates and (x,y) are relative coordinates. If the coordinates are followed by an `i`, the coordinates are in inches. If the coordinates are followed by a `cm`, the coordinates are in centimeters. Otherwise, the coordinates are in pixels.

Absolute position coordinates define a horizontal and vertical offset from the upper left corner of the fax document, and relative coordinates are from the current location (i.e., the location of the embedded image statement in the text, PCL, or PostScript file). In other words, if absolute position coordinates are supplied, the position of the embedded image statement in the text, PCL, or PostScript file is irrelevant.

Examples

This example shows how to embed a TIFF file (`logo.tif`) directly into a text, PCL, or PostScript in the default location (i.e., at the exact point of the embedded image statement in the text, PCL, or PostScript file). It will extend down from this point to the full height of the image and up to the full horizontal width of the page.

```
@+IMAGE[logo.tif]
```

This example shows how to embed a TIFF file `logo.tif` two inches from the left margin and five inches from the top margin. The image will extend down from this point to its full height and up to the full horizontal width of the page.

```
@+IMAGE[logo.tif;ax=2i;ay=5i]
```

@+INCLUDE

The `@+INCLUDE` embedded image command allows you to insert TIFF files in a faxable document. The image is inserted in line with the text at the current location of the embedded image statement in the text, PCL, or PostScript file.

The basic syntax for an embedded image statement is:

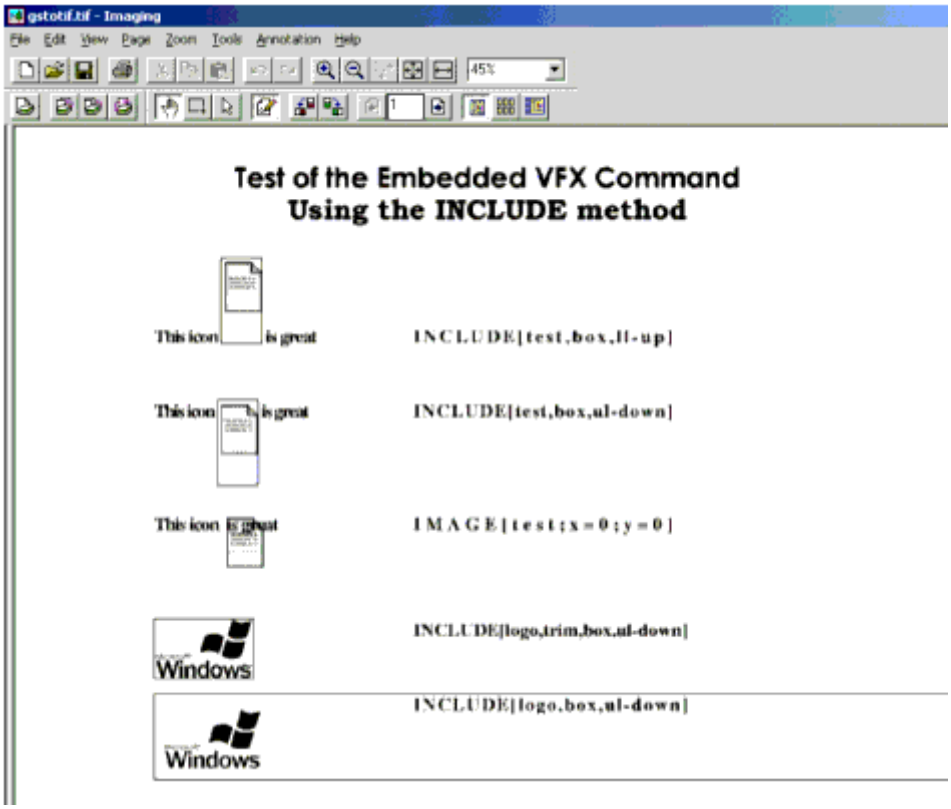
```
@+INCLUDE [<file_name.tif>,fine|std|trim|box|ul-down|ll-up]
```

`Where`

- `<file_name.tif>` is the name of your TIFF file.
- `fine/std` sets the image resolution (fine or standard).
- `trim` trims the image if it goes over the margins
- `box` draws an optional box around the image
- `ul-down/ll-up` sets the display direction (upperleft-down or lowerleft-up)

Examples

The following sample file illustrates the use of the `@+INCLUDE` embedded image command and its options `box` and`ul-down/ll-up`. It also shows the difference with the `@+IMAGE` embedded image command that includes the image behind the text:



Capabilities and limitations

The `@+IMAGE` and `@+INCLUDE` embedded commands must be all uppercase. The remainder of the embedded image statement (e.g., file name, position coordinates, options, etc.) is case-insensitive.

The `@+IMAGE` and `@+INCLUDE` statements can only include single-page TIFF image files. Multi-page TIFF files are not supported, and only the first page will be processed.

Embedded image statements can only refer to files in these directories:

- `$VSIFAX/lib/images`
- `$VSIFAX/faxq/<user_ID>/images`

You must use the `vupload` command to place image files in these directories. Copying and pasting the files is not sufficient.

Because these files must be located in one of these directories, full path names are not required nor are they supported.

Embedded tags

Using vfx Tags describes ways to use tags directly or to pass text files containing tag statements to the fax server. There is yet another way to use `vfx` tags that does not require ASCII text files.

You can embed `vfx` tags directly into ASCII text, PCL, or PostScript files. If `vfx` encounters specific embedded tag sequences in these files, it uses them to create the fax envelope.

Embedded tags are a good way to extend print-to-fax functionality and implement more powerful fax integrations.

Capabilities and limitations

Unlike the `@+IMAGE` command, embedded tags are scanned only if the file is piped or redirected to `vfx` as `STDIN`.

The @+VFX statement must be all uppercase. However, the tag/value statements are case-insensitive.

The entire embedded tag sequence must be continuous-it cannot contain any spaces or explicit line breaks (hard returns).

If you need to include a space in a tag value, use the tilde (~) character. Any tilde (~) character encountered is replaced by a space unless it is escaped (\~).

You can only embed `vfx` tags that store fax envelope See The fax envelope information. These are sometimes referred to as cover page tags because their primary purpose is to place fax envelope information on fax cover pages. This is a list of tags you can embed:

Tag	Description
`cli`	client ID
`fa1-fa3`	from address lines 1 thru 3
`fcn`	from country name
`fco`	from company name
`fem`	from email address
`ffn`	from fax number
`fnm`	from name
`fvn`	from voice number
`ntf`	note file
`sub`	subject line
`sig`	signature file
`tco`	to company name
`tfn`	to fax number
`tg1-tg4`	user-defined tages 1 through 4
`tin`	custom to information
`tnm`	to name
`tvn`	to voice number

See also
See Using vfx Tags for detailed information about these and other `vfx` tags.

Examples

This is an example of an embedded local fax number:

```
@+VFX[tfn=555-1212]
```

This is an example of an embedded local fax number, recipient name (with tilde (~) as a space holder) and cover page:

```
@+VFX[tfn=555-1212;tnm=Mr.~Smith;cvr=classic]
```

This example shows how to use both embedded tags and embedded images in a file (`sample.txt`):

```
@+VFX[tfn=5551212;tco=TechSupport]
```

This is an example of how to send a fax using the embedded commands. The embedded command sends the fax number and the "To Company Name" to the VFX command.

```
@+IMAGE[<filename.tif>]
```

This command places an image file in the location where the command is found.

You could redirect this file to the `vfx` command using any of the following commands:

```
vfx < sample.txt
more sample.txt | vfx
$ cat sample.txt | vfx
C:\> type sample.txt | vfx
```

Note

The first two commands work on any platform, the third command works on Unix/Linux, and the fourth command works on Windows.

Print-to-fax

Print-to-fax

Print-to-fax is a versatile way to either deliver a fax envelope to the fax server or prepare a fax envelope so that it can be delivered by other means. You can use the print-to-fax features of VSI-FAX to send faxes from any application where the Print option is available (Microsoft Word, Microsoft Works, Microsoft Excel, Word Perfect, StarOffice, etc.).

There are two primary ways to send faxes from any application with print-to-fax:

- Use one of the VSI-FAX print drivers.
- Use a normal (non-VSI-FAX) PostScript, PCL or ASCII print driver.

When facing print-to-fax issues, you should consult the troubleshooting section below.

Using VSI-FAX print drivers (Windows only)

The easiest way to implement print-to-fax is to direct your application's print output to one of the fax print drivers provided with VSI-FAX. A separate print driver is provided with each fax client. The VSI-FAX print drivers are **printers** that allow you to send faxes from any print-capable Windows application.

Once a VSI-FAX print driver has been installed on your computer, all you have to do is print your document on this printer in order to send it to the VSI-FAX server, on which your document will be processed and sent to its recipients. After you have submitted your documents you will be able to track them, from submission to delivery, using VSI-FAX Server Administration or LanFax Manager.

When printing a document, the VSI-FAX print driver rasterizes your application information session, prompts you for essential send information (e.g., fax number, recipient name) and delivers the fax envelope to the fax server. In other words, the VSI-FAX print drivers provide both a way to create the fax envelope and a delivery mechanism for getting the envelope to the fax server.

Important note
This print-to-fax mode is only available on Microsoft Windows client systems. However, you can use it to send faxes from a Windows application to an Unix VSI-FAX server.

Using a normal (non-VSI-FAX) PostScript, PCL or ASCII print driver

The second way to implement print-to-fax is to direct your application's print to a conventional (non-VSI-FAX) PostScript, PCL or ASCII print driver and save the output to a file.

The advantage to this approach is that you can use any PostScript, PCL or ASCII print driver installed on your system-you are not restricted to using one of the VSI-FAX print drivers.

The disadvantage to this approach is that you must get the PostScript, PCL or ASCII to the fax server-you do not have an integrated delivery mechanism. In most cases, you will need to pass these files to the fax server using `vfx` commands.

Troubleshooting print-to-fax issues

Standard print-to-fax process

The following provides an explanation of the standard print-to-fax process:

1. A document is printed on the VSI-FAX Client printer (VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client, VSI-FAX Mailmerge Client or VSI-FAX Outlook Client printers).
2. A pcl file is generated by the printer in a temporary directory. The default location of this directory depends on the operating system:
    - On Windows XP: `C:\Documents and Settings\<user>\Local Settings\Temp\<user>`
    - On Windows Vista: `C:\Users\<user>\AppData\Local\Temp\<user>`

    Where `<user>` is the current Windows user.
3. A printing finished event is emitted and the **vfxptof** process detects this printing signal
4. The VSI-FAX client is launched with the generated pcl file attached retrieved from the temporary folder.

When confronted to a print-to-fax issue, you should first of all determine what step of the above process is affected. This will allow you to troubleshoot your problems more efficiently.

Solving common print-to-fax issues

By default, when printing a document from an application to the LanFax printer, the LanFax window is displayed behind the current application and not on the foreground.

Follow these steps if you want the LanFax windows to appear on top of the printing application:

- Click Start > Run... and enter `Regedit` to start the **Registry Editor**.
- Go to the following registry location:

  `HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Control Panel\Desktop`
- Change the value of the **ForegroundLockTimeout** key to `00000000`
- Close and reopen your Windows session to validate these changes.

Warning
Changing this registry key will affect all the Windows applications of the current user, not just VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client.

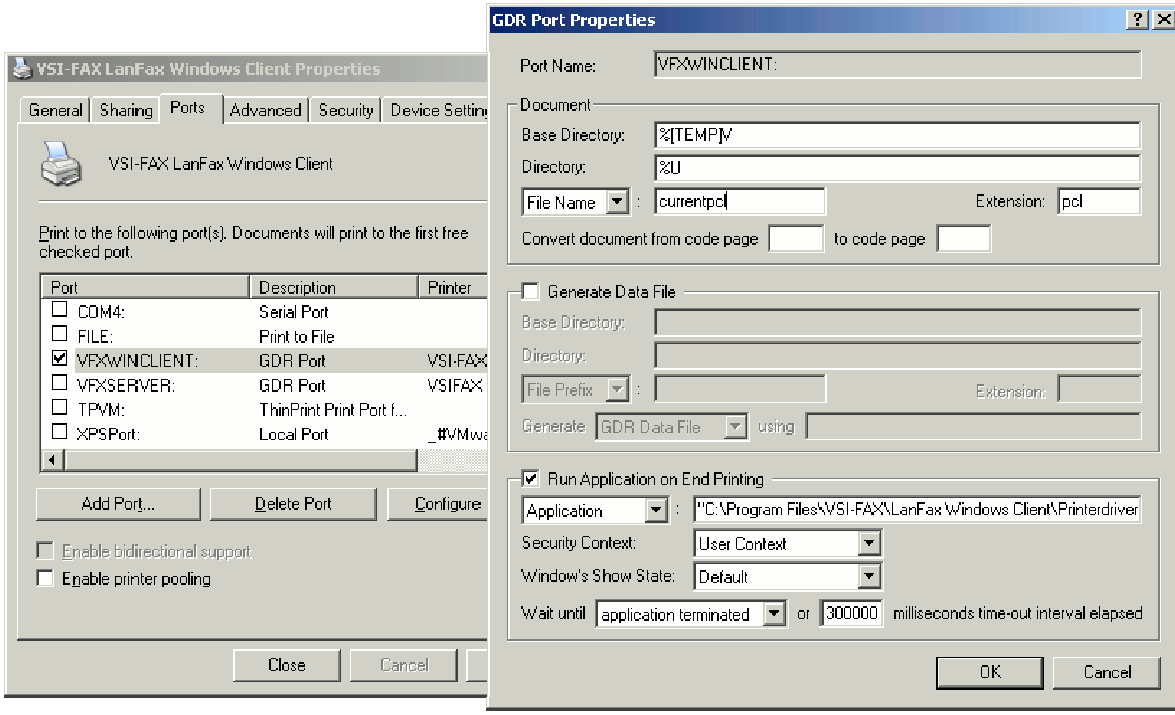
Troubleshooting steps

In case of an issue with the print-to-fax, the following things need to be verified depending on where the process fails:

1. First of all, you must check that a pcl file called **currentpcl.pcl** is generated in the `%temp%\%username%` directory. Depending on your operating system, this directory may be:
    - On Windows XP: `C:\Documents and Settings\<user>\Local Settings\Temp\<user>`
    - On Windows Vista: `C:\Users\<user>\AppData\Local\Temp\<user>`

    Where `<user>` is the current Windows user.
2. If you cannot find this pcl file:
    - Check the properties of the VSI-FAX printer. To do so:
        1. In the Control Panel, open the Printers and Faxes directory.
        2. Right-click on the VSI-FAX printer and select Properties.
        3. In the Ports tab, select the port currently used by the printer (in most of the cases, it will be `VFXWINCLIENT`).
        4. Click on the Configure Port... button.

      Click here for a preview of this interface.



We strongly recommend that you use the default port parameters.

The table below contains the port parameters that are set by default for the VSI-FAX client printers (**VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client**, **VSI-FAX Mailmerge Client** and **VSI-FAX Outlook Client**):

Field name	Default value for the client printers
Base Directory	%[TEMP]V
Directory	%U
File Name	currentpcl
Extension	pcl
Application	The default value of this field depends on the client printer: ■ For the **VSI-FAX LanFax Windows Client** printer: "C:\Program Files\VSI-FAX\LanFax Windows Client\Printerdrivers\vfxpostprint.exe" "%2" "%3" "%U" ■ For the **VSI-FAX Mailmerge Client** printer: "C:\Program Files\VSI-FAX\Mailmerge Client\vfxpostprint.exe" "%2" "%3" "%U" ■ For the **VSI-FAX Outlook Client** printer: "C:\Program Files\VSI-FAX\Outlook Client\vfxpostprint.exe" "%2" "%3" "%U"
Security Context	User Context
Windows's Show State	Default
Wait until	application terminated
or	300000

The table below contains the port parameters that are set by default for the **VSI-FAX Server** printer:

Field name	Default value for the VSI-FAX Server printer
Directory	C:\Program Files\VSI-FAX\FaxServer\spool\temp
File Name	currentpcl
Extension	pcl
Application	"C:\Program Files\VSI-FAX\FaxServer\lbin\vfxpostprint.exe" "%2" "%3" "%U"
Security Context	User Context
Windows's Show State	Default
Wait until	application terminated
or	300000

Note

All other port parameters are empty/unchecked by default.

If you have altered these parameters, you must check that:

- The concatenation of the Base Directory and Directory fields is a valid path that refers to an existing directory.
- Any directory path that contains spaces is surrounded by **"** characters.
- The file name/prefix and the file extension field values **don't** contain one of the following characters: **`*."/\[]:;|=,`**
- If you use environment variables in any fields (for example the Base Directory and/or Directory fields), you must:
  - Check that their syntax respects the following format:

    `%[<varname>]V`

    Where `<varname>` is the name of the environment variable to use (for example `TEMP`, `TMP` or `USERNAME`).

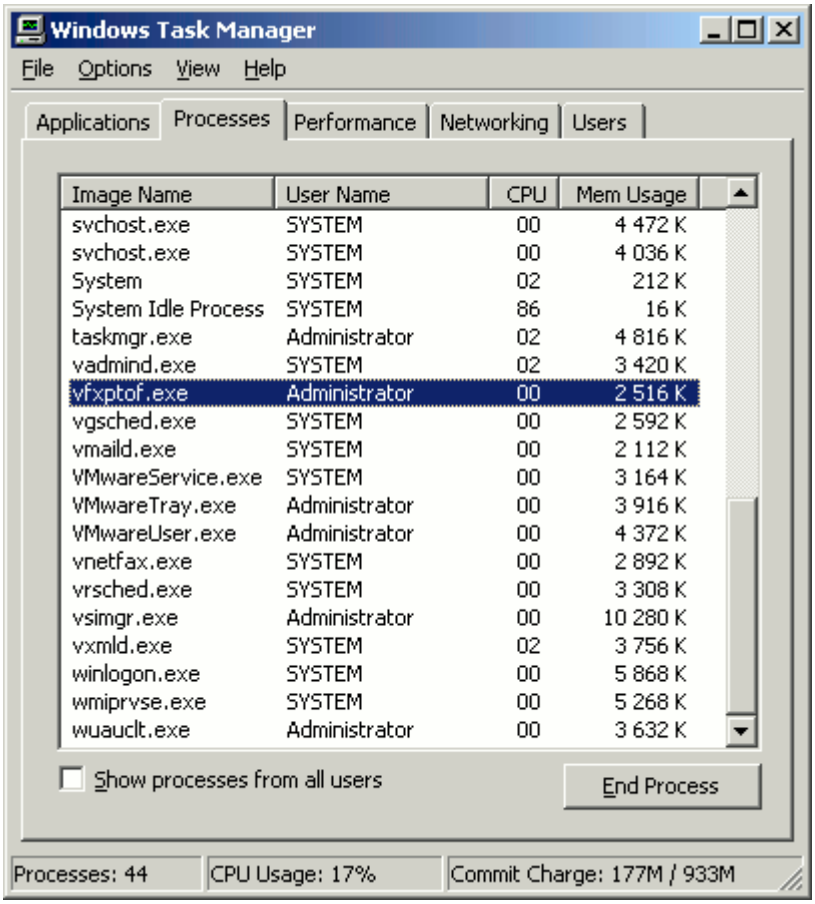
    Tip

    For the `USERNAME` environment variable, you can supply **%U** instead of `%[USERNAME]V`
  - Check that the contents of your environment variables are either a valid directory name or a valid path. To do so, you can either run the **set** command or check your computer's advanced settings.

    Note

    Remember that environment variables defined for a specific user override system variables.
- If the above properties are correctly set, check that the user has the rights to read and write on the target temporary folder.

3. If the .pcl file is correctly generated in the relevant directory, you must check that the VSI-FAX client process is running:
   - Check if you can find the **vfxptof** process in the Windows Task Manager:



Terminal Service considerations

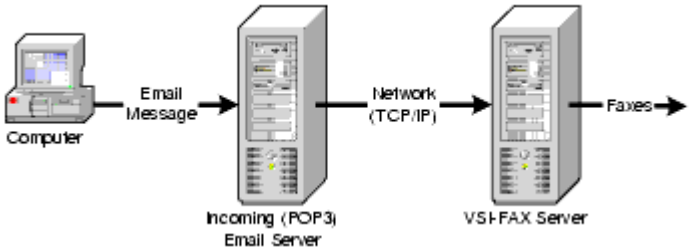
When troubleshooting print-to-fax issues in a Terminal Service environment, you must remember the following facts:

- We recommend that you install the latest version of the LanFax client on Terminal Service servers.
- By default, in Terminal Service servers, the `currentpcl.pcl` is generated in the `C:\Documents and Settings\<username>\Local Settings\Temp\<username>\<session number>` folder. This behavior is correctly handled by the vfxptof process.
- When verifying if the VSI-FAX client process is running on a Terminal Service server, you must also check the Show processes from all users to make sure that the **vfxptof** process is running for the appropriate user.

Email-to-fax

Email-to-fax

Email-to-fax is a delivery mechanism ideally suited to remote fax integration because it does not require a direct network connection to the fax server, nor access to the fax server file system. A network connection from the fax server to an incoming (POP3) Internet mail server is necessary, and your application must have emailing capability.



Configuration and setup

The email to fax feature is normally setup during VSI-FAX installation. However, if for some reason you did not do this when your fax server was installed, you can do it now by performing the following:

1. Verify the integrity of the network connection between the fax server and your incoming (POP3) Internet mail server.
2. Create a dedicated fax email account on your incoming (POP3) Internet mail server.

   Tip

   We recommend creating this account with the user name `autofax` as it is unlikely this name is already in use.

   The remainder of this section will assume that you are using `autofax` for your POP3 email-to-fax account. If you decide to use another name, substitute that name in our examples.

   Important

   This email account must be set aside strictly for faxing. The fax server will assume that any message in this email inbox is a fax and will process it accordingly. Therefore, ensure that the `autofax` email address is not added to any email groups or corporate mailing lists.
3. Configure the fax server to monitor the autofax email account.

   You can do this using the VSI-FAX Server Administration snap-in or by manually modifying settings in the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` configuration file.

   1. Enter your incoming (POP3) Internet mail server host name, fully qualified Internet domain name or IP address.

If you are	Do this
Using the MMC snap-in	Go to the Fax Server Email Gateway properties and enter the host name, domain name, or IP address in the Pop Host name field.

If you are	Do this
Modifying `vsisrv.ini`	Go to the `VPOPD` section and add the host name, domain name or IP address of your incoming (POP3) Internet mail server to the `host-name=` entry.

2. Enter the name of the POP3 user account you created in step 1.

If you are	Do this
Using the MMC snap-in	Go to the Fax Server Email Gateway properties and enter the user name in the User name field.
Modifying `vsisrv.ini`	Go to the `VPOPD` section and add the user name to the `user-name=` entry.

3. Enter the password for the POP3 user account.
   If you did not create a password for this account in step 1, you do not need to enter a password

If you are	Do this
Using the MMC snap-in	Go to the Fax Server Email Gateway properties and enter the password in the Password field.
Modifying `vsisrv.ini`	The `vsisrv.ini` password entry is encrypted, therefore it cannot be directly added via a text editor. You must use the `vfxadmin` command line utility to add this entry. Open a command shell and enter the following: `vfxadmin config -a -e VPOPD password <entry>` Where `<entry>` is the actual password defined for the POP3 user account you created in step 1.

Message formats

There are two different acceptable message formats for email messages sent to the autofax account.

Fax number in subject line

If your email message to the autofax account includes a valid fax number or email address in the subject line, the fax server assumes that the body of the email message is plain text.

The syntax for including a fax number in the email subject line is:

`<fax_number>[<subject_text>]`

Where `<fax_number>` is a valid fax number or an Internet email address. The email address must be preceded by a # sign. `<subject_text>` is optional subject line text, enclosed in brackets.

The remainder of the mail message is limited to ASCII text and other file attachments that can be natively imaged by the fax server (e.g., PostScript, PCL, text, etc.). For example, you cannot include tag or batch files in this kind of email message. The fax server will image the tag and batch files as plain text.

No fax number in subject line

If your email message to the autofax account does not include a valid fax number or email address in the email subject line, the fax server assumes that the body of the email message is a tag or batch file.

See also

Refer to Tag files and Batch files for additional information about how to define a fax envelope using these techniques.

Message attachments

For non-tag email coming in via POP3 or VSMTPD, the first attachment (the body of the email) is scanned for any @+VFX[ ] lines, and any tags found are added to the job. The rest of the attachment is processed normally.

If the first attachment consists of only @+VFX[ ] lines, the attachment file is discarded after extracting the tags, and the tags then apply to all subsequent attachments. This allows a user to specify any embeddable tag in a fax request submitted via email.

SMTP Authentication

SMTP Authentication

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is a protocol for sending email messages between servers. VSI-FAX supports the authentication required by some mail servers to receive submitted email messages.

Note
Because of the specialized authentication MSN uses, it is not supported as an ISP.

The following parameters, which support the use of email authentication within VSI-FAX, can be set in `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file, [VMAIL]section.

`auth-type`	The authentication type to use. This must match one of the types recognized by the SMTP server. When you issue the `EHLO SMTP` command to the mail server, it will respond with the authentication types available in the `AUTH` line.
`auth-rsp`	The list of responses to use. This is an encrypted string consisting of a colon-delimited list of responses. The vmail program will decrypt this entry and send each part as a response to an authentication prompt, encoding the text in base64 as it sends it.
`auth-delim`	An alternate delimiter to use in case any of the response strings contain a colon.

Configuring VSI-FAX for SMTP Authentication

To configure VSI-FAX for mail server authentication:

1. Determine the type of authentication used by your mail server:
2. Issue the `telnet <mailserverIP> 25` command to connect to the SMTP port on the mail server.
3. Issue the `EHLO` command.
4. Check the `AUTH` line to see what authentication types are available.
5. Issue the `QUIT` command to disconnect from the mail server.
6. In `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file, `[VMAIL]` section, add the `auth-type=<authtype>` linewhere `<authtype>` is the type of authentication used by the mail server. For example, if the mail server is using `login` authentication, you would add the following line:

   ```
   auth-type=login
   ```
7. Add the response the mail server requires using the `vfxadmin config` command from a command prompt. You will be prompted to enter the `auth-rsp`. You must enter `<user>:<pswd>` where `<user>` is the mail user the way it appears in the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file and `<pswd>` is that user's password. You will need to re-enter it. (The entries in the `auth-rsp` field are colon delimited and encrypted. Since the string is encrypted, you must add it using the `vfxadmin config` command instead of entering it directly into the `vsisrv.ini` file.) There should now be an encrypted password line in the [VMAIL] section of the vsisrv.ini file. For example, if the auth-type was `login`, and a login name (test) and password (hello) were required, you would execute the following steps:
8. Issue `vfxadmin config -a -p -e VMAIL auth-rsp`

9. Enter `test:hello` when prompted for the `auth-rsp` and when prompted to re-enter the `auth-rsp`.
10. Send an email message from VSI-FAX with either of these two commands:
    - `vfx -n <emailaddress> <file>`
    - `vfx -n <emailaddress> -O -C classic`
11. If the email message is not received, you can troubleshoot the problem with the following steps:
12. Set debug to `On` in `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file, `[VFXSCHED]` section.
13. Set debug to 2 in `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file, `[VMAIL]` section.
14. Send an email message.
15. Check the contents of `$VSIFAX/spool/logs/vmail` log file to see if errors are reported.

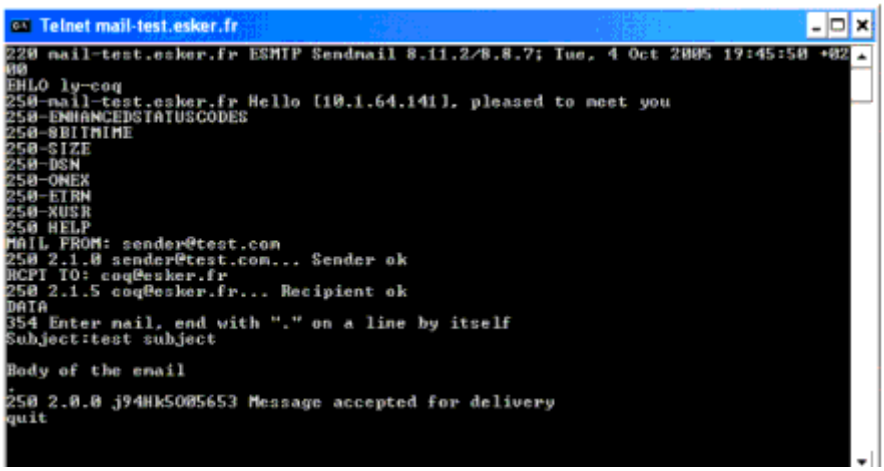
SMTP Protocol

This is a basic explanation of the SMTP protocol: the commands used, the possible answers from the Mail server as well as how to test it.

The usual SMTP port is 25. To connect to the mail server, open a command prompt and connect with a telnet on the port 25.

Command Sent to the mail server	Answer from the mail server
telnet <mail.domain.ext> 25	
	220-mail.domain.ext ESMTP Sendmail <version-number>; <date+time>
HELO <local.domain.ext>	
OR	250-mail.domain.ext Hello [local.ip], pleased to meet you
EHLO <local.domain.ext>	
	250-mail.domain.ext Hello [local.ip], pleased to meet you 250-ENHANCEDSTATUSCODES 250-8BITMIME 250-SIZE 250-DSN 250-ONEX 250-ETRN 250-XUSR 250 HELP
MAIL FROM: mail@domain.ext	
	250-2.1.0 mail@domain.ext... Sender ok
RCPT TO: mail@otherdomain.ext	
	250-2.1.0 mail@otherdomain.ext... Recipient ok
DATA Subject:<subject> //press enter twice type the body	

Command Sent to the mail server	Answer from the mail server
. //a "." Character followed by enter mlarks the end of the body	
	250-2.0.0 <message ID> Message accepted for delivery
Quit	
	221-2.0.0 mail.domain.ext closing connection Connection closed by foreign host.



Advanced Group Faxing

Advanced Group Faxing

You can send the same fax to a group of recipients using one of our fax clients. You can also do modest amounts of group faxing directly from the `vfx` command line.

However, if you need to send faxes to large groups, send personalized faxes tailored to each recipient or re-use your group faxes, consider one or more of the advanced techniques described in this section.

Which group faxing strategy is best for me?

Before you decide on a particular approach or strategy for your group faxing, consider the following:

Are you using recipient information from a database or spreadsheet program?

Consider using a group file. Export your information to a delimited ASCII text file. This strategy is ideal for semi-automated fax blasting to a large recipient list.

Are you creating your fax document with a word processor?

Consider using your word processor's mail merge feature to create a fax merge using the VSI-FAX Mailmerge client (for desktop users) or the Fax Merge (for integrators). While you can't fully automate this technique, most modern word processors have some sort of mail merge feature that can be used to send group faxes.

Do you need to re-use your group fax?

Consider using a template file. You can define the overall layout of your fax with the template file and populate it with recipient information from a group file. If you need to send another group fax to a different group of recipients, simply use a different group file.

VSI-FAX MailMerge client

VSI-FAX MailMerge client uses the Microsoft Mail Merge function to create and send faxes. For details on the MailMerge Client installation and use, refer to VSI-FAX MailMerge Client (page 203).

Mailmerge mechanism

Here are the details on the Mailmerge process:

1. When using the Send to VSI-FAX button, a Word document for each record is generated and printed on the Mailmerge printer.
2. A file called **mailmerge<recordNb>.pcl** is created for each Word document by the printer in the temporary folder of the Mailmerge client. By default:
   - On Windows XP: `C:\Documents and Settings\<user>\Local Settings\Temp\<user>`
   - On Windows Vista: `C:\Users\<user>\AppData\Local\Temp\<user>`

   Where `<user>` is the current Windows user.
3. Then, the following command line is executed to submit the fax: `mailmerge.exe -n <fax nb> -d mailmerge<recordNb>.pcl`.

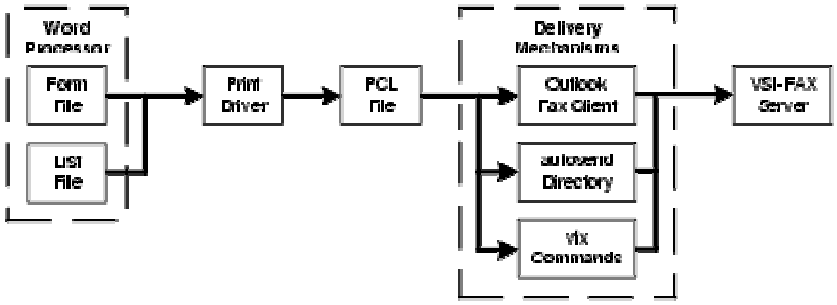
Fax Merge

Important
The Fax Merge feature is designed to be used by integrators. It is not recommended for desktop faxing. Desktop users should use the VSI-FAX Mailmerge client instead.

Fax merge is a special kind of print-to-fax operation that uses your word processor's mail merge feature to send individualized faxes to a group of recipients. Refer to Print-to-fax for more information.

When you print a mail merge job, your word processor creates each individualized document by inserting variable information, such as the person's name, title and address, from a data source document (list file) into a content template document (form file). The software repeats this process as many times as necessary to create and print all the required individualized documents.

This diagram shows how to adapt a basic mail merge feature for fax merge.



Word processor

The first step in creating a fax merge job is to use your word processor's mail merge feature to create a content template (form file) that will be individualized with information from a data source (list file). In many cases, this data source is a text file containing entries for each fax recipient. However, some word processors support reading this recipient information directly from a database.

To adapt your word processor's mail merge feature for fax merging, create your form file using a structure that allows the fax server to distinguish destination data from the rest of the information that is the actual fax you want to send. Destination data is embedded into the form file using standard VSI-FAX embedded tags. Embedded fax tags always use this format:

```
@+TAG[<tag>=<value>]
```

Where `<tag>` is a valid send tag and `<value>` is a valid value for that tag. For example, this embedded tag is used to include a classic cover page with a fax:

```
@+TAG[cvr=classic]
```

See also
Embedded tags

Important
All embedded tag statements must have 10 pt. Courier typeface applied to them. Otherwise, the fax server will image the embedded tag statements as plain text.

Example form and list files

These are example Microsoft Word form and list files. They will be used to send a simple fax survey to Mr. Smith and Mr. Jones.

Word form	List files content

Word form	List files content
@+TAG[tfn=<<FaxNumber>>]	Name, Location, FaxNumber
@+TAG[cvr=classic]	Smith, London, 5551212
---------Page Break ----------	Jones, New York, 5551213
Hello Mr. <<Name>>	
Do you still live in <<Location>>	

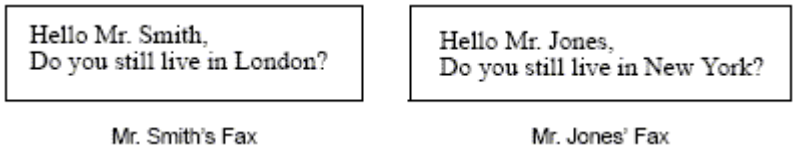
Notice that the example form file contains an embedded fax number (@+TAG [tfn=«FaxNumber»]) and an embedded cover page designation (@+TAG [cvr=classic]), followed by a page break. This first page break tells the fax server that all the information in the document before the page break is destination data, not part of the actual fax. The embedded fax number value is a field that will be read from the list file.

Note
The entire embedded tag area of the form file (i.e., everything before the first page break) must have the Courier font applied to it. Otherwise, the fax server will image the embedded tag statements as plain text.

The remainder of the form file is the actual fax template which will be individualized for each recipient. This includes a salutation using a name field («Name») and the survey question using a location field («Location»).

The sample list file is a text file. Each data record is separated by a hard return; each value within that record is separated by a comma. Typically, the first record in a list file contains the header labels for the remaining records. In this case, header labels Name, Location and FaxNumber tell us that each subsequent record (line) will contain these three pieces of information (values) in this order.

This is how each person's fax survey will look:



Print driver

Normal mail merge jobs are sent to a hardcopy printer. Fax merge jobs must be imaged into a single PCL file. This PCL file must contain all the individualized pages for all fax merge recipients. There are two ways to accomplish this:

- Send your word processor's mail merge output directly to a VSI-FAX print driver. This will automatically create a single PCL file that can be sent to the fax server via one of the fax clients.
- Use your computer's Print to File command to save your word processor's mail merge output to a PCL file. The advantage to this method is that you can use this with various server integration techniques (e.g., vfx commands, tag and batch files, autosend, etc.) to submit the PCL file to the fax server.

Delivery mechanisms

After the PCL file has been created by the print driver, it is ready to be submitted to the fax server for fax merge processing. In order to have the fax server perform special fax merge processing on it, you must deliver the PCL file as a fax attachment in a fax envelope with faxmerge as the fax number. There are two basic ways to do this:

- If you directed your word processor output to one of the VSI-FAX print drivers, a fax form will be displayed and the PCL file will be included automatically as an attachment. If you are using the VSI-FAX Outlook Client, enter the following MAPI command in the To field:

  [Fax:FAXMERGE]

- If you printed your word processor output to a PCL file, you can pass that file to the fax server using various delivery mechanisms (e.g., `vfx` commands, autosend, etc.). Two tags are required:

  ```
  tfn="faxmerge" fll="my_attachment.pcl"
  ```

  Where `my_attachment.pcl` is the mail merge PCL file created by the print driver.

Fax server

Anytime the fax server receives a fax with a fax number of `faxmerge`, the fax server immediately knows that this is a fax merge job, not a normal fax request. The fax server assigns this job a group fax ID and begins fax merge processing.

Troubleshooting problems when submitting Fax merge jobs

Problem: You receive the error "`could not find any fax destinations`" when submitting a fax merge job.

Cause: The "`could not find any destination`" error is caused by one of the following factors:

- The format of the fax merge document is incorrect.
- The printer driver that is being used rasterizes the output, which prevents VSI-FAX from recognizing the embedded tags in the output file.
- The embedded tag lines are in a font that is rasterized by the printer driver. This causes the embedded tag line data to be rasterized, and the embedded tags cannot be recognized by VSI-FAX.

Solution: Execute the following troubleshooting steps to determine the cause of the problem:

1. Verify that the fax merge document is in the correct format. For this, refer to Example form and list files.
2. Verify that you changed the printer driver of your fax client printer (e.g. VSI-FAX Outlook client) to an "HP LaserJet 4" or "HP LaserJet 4M" printer driver. You can change the printer driver with the following steps:
3. Start > Settings > Printers.
4. Right-click on the printer, and select "Properties".
5. Select an "HP LaserJet 4" or "HP LaserJet 4M" driver in the Driver field. The Driver field is located on the Advanced tab, the General tab or the Details tab depending on the operating system the fax client is loaded on:

   If there is no "HP LaserJet 4" or "HP LaserJet 4M" driver listed, then click on the New Driver button, and add the appropriate driver using the Add Printer Driver Wizard.
6. Verify that the embedded tag statements are in a font that won't be rasterized. The 10 point Courier font works on most machines. If Courier 10 doesn't work, then try changing the font used for the embedded tag lines. The Arial font often works on machines when the Courier font does not.

Batch files

Batch files are similar to tag files. The primary difference is that they can send entirely different faxes to different recipients. This is done by defining several sections within the batch file:

- A **>common section** (containing common information for all fax recipients)
- One or more **recipient sections** (containing personalized information for each fax recipient)

See also
Tag files

File structure and syntax

Consider a simple batch file:

```
fnm=MyName
fco=MyCompany
@+COMMON
tfn=5551212
```

```
tnm="Mr. Smith"
fll=hello.txt
@+END

tfn=5551213
tnm="Mr. Jones"
fll=goodbye.txt
@+END
```

Common entries always appear at the beginning of the file and continue thru the `@+COMMON` entry. These two entries (`fnm=MyName` and `fco=MyCompany`) define the sender's name and company, respectively. A common section is optional.

The rest of our sample batch file contains two recipient sections, one for Mr. Smith and one for Mr. Jones. Each recipient section defines a different fax number, fax name and file attachment. Notice that each recipient section ends with a `@+END` entry.

Just as with tag files (refer to Tag files with multiple files or recipients), when you define more than one recipient (which you always do with a batch file) or more than one fax attachment, your batch file must be constructed in a particular format or that fax will not be properly sent.

1. Each recipient block must start with a `tfn` tag. All subsequent information (e.g., name, company name, etc.) is assumed to be for that recipient until the next `tfn` tag is encountered.
2. Each file inclusion block must start with one of the following tags:

Tag	Description
`fdl`	Local folder
`fds`	Server folder
`fll`	Local file attachment
`fls`	Server file attachment

All subsequent file-specific information is assumed to be for that recipient until the next file inclusion tag is encountered.

Delivery and processing

There can be only one batch file per fax request (e.g., `vfx` command).

All other command line arguments and tag files are processed before the batch file is processed. Therefore, any options or tags following the `-B` option will actually appear in the fax request tag list before any tags in the batch file.

Files referenced in the batch file are processed before files referenced on the command line (including any files referenced in any tag file).

Fax envelopes are created for each recipient in the following order:

- Tag list from the command line
- Tag list from the common section
- Tag list from that recipient section
- Files referenced in the batch file
- Files referenced on the command line

If the last `@+END` entry is missing from a batch file, one is assumed.

Group Files

Often, when you are sending a group fax, your recipient information is actually stored in some sort of database. Most databases support some sort of data export to a neutral file format, typically some form of "delimited ASCII."

The VSI-FAX group mechanism allows you to pass these delimited ASCII files to the fax server. The fax server will use recipient information in the file to send the group fax.

File Structure and Syntax

Group files have a very simple structure. Consider the following sample group file:

```
Delimiter= ,
 Tagnames=tnm, tfn

 Mr. Smith, 5551212
 Mr. Jones, 5551213
```

The first line contains a delimiter statement. The default delimiter is the pipe (`|`)character. If your database exports to pipe-delimited ASCII format, you do not need to add this line to your group file.

The second line contains a tag listing. This defines the tag order that will be used to retrieve information from the remaining records in this file. In this example, two tags are used: to name (`fnm`) and fax number (`tfn`).

The remaining lines in the group file contain the name and fax number for each recipient of this group fax. In this case, there are two recipients: Mr. Smith and Mr. Jones.

Delivery and Processing

Group files must be identified to the fax server using the `vfx -g <srvr_grp_file>` or `-G <phonebook_group_alias>` options. The `-g` option is used when the group file is located on the fax server in the `$VSIFAX/lib/groups` directory; the `-G` option is used when a phone book group alias is designated.

Fax merge using group and template files

Although template files are primarily used to customize various email messages sent by the fax server, they work especially well with group files. The combination of the two is ideally suited for sending highly personalized faxes to large groups.

You can use the group file to define various personalized pieces of information for each recipient (this information it typically retrieved from a database and exported to some delimited ASCII text file).

You can then use a template file to merge the information from the group file into a common fax form.

When you send a group fax using a template file, the template file must be the first file attachment defined in the fax envelope. Otherwise, it will be imaged as a plain ASCII text file.

Because template files can be ASCII text, PostScript or PCL files, all of which can be natively imaged for faxing, the fax server must have some way of knowing when to perform the special processing needed to interpret tag statements inside a template file. This is done by specifying tag processing with the `vfx -t fcv=tags` option. This can be done using the `vfx` command line, in a tag or batch file or by using embedded commands.

Consider again the simple group file `groups.txt` from one of our previous examples:

```
Delimiter= ,
Tagnames=tnm, tfn

Mr. Smith, 5551212
Mr. Jones, 5551213
```

Consider also the example template file:

```
Dear ${tnm:Sir},

 A fax was sent to ${tfn} concerning ${sub:your recent order}.
```

```
Sincerely,
${fnm:VSI-FAX}
```

To send these files to the fax server, enter:

> vfx -g groups.txt -t fll=confirm.txt -t fcv=tags

This is how each person's fax will look:

Dear Smith,

A fax was sent to 5551212 concerning your recent order.

Sincerely,

VSI-FAX

Dear Jones,

A fax was sent to 5551213 concerning your recent order.

Sincerely,

VSI-FAX

Notice that the actual names and fax numbers were used from the group file. Notice also that because the group file did not specify a subject (i.e., `sub` tag) or send name (i.e., `fnm` tag), the default subject, "your recent order" and send name VSI-FAX were used, respectively.

VSI-FAX MailMerge Client

VSI-FAX MailMerge Client uses the Microsoft Mail Merge function to create and send faxes. The client is made up of a several components:

- A VSI-FAX MailMerge Client printer that is used to send the faxes to VSI-FAX.
- A simple program that is used to submit the jobs to the VSI-FAX Server
- A Microsoft Word document (.doc) and template (.dot). The document and template are the same; they are both provided so you can use whichever one is most common in your environment.

Before installing the MailMerge Client, consult the Supported Platforms and Equipment (page 11).

Installing the MailMerge Client

1. Load your VSI-FAX CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive.

   If the installation program does not start automatically, run `autorun.exe` located in the root directory of your VSI-FAX CD-ROM.

   The VSI-FAX CD browser appears.
2. Choose MailMerge Client under Desktop Client.
3. The Welcome screen appears. Click Next to proceed with the installation.
4. Click Next if you agree with the destination directory for the MailMerge Client program files. To install MailMerge Client in another directory, click Browse and follow the on-screen instructions.
5. Enter your VSI-FAX user account login name (client ID) and password. Enter the hostname or IP address of the fax server to use.
6. Click Next to proceed with the installation.

   The program files are copied to the your local hard drive. This takes several seconds.
7. When the Setup Complete screen appears, click Finish.
8. After installation is complete, a Word .doc file, template and a sample XLS datasource will be located in the directory where the client was installed. These files can be copied wherever you want.
9. The Send to VSI-FAX option will not appear in the mail merge wizard if the macro security setting is set to the higher level. To set the security setting in Word XP or 2003, select Tools > Macro > Security, then select the Medium level.To check the security setting in Word 2007, click the Office button, then click the Word Options. Click Trust Center, then click the Trust Center settings button. Select Macro Settings and Disable all macros with notification. You will be prompted to enable the macro each time you want to use it.
10. To familiarize yourself with the process, you should first test the client with the sample word document provided. This sample includes MailMerge fields to be filled with data retrieved from the sample Excel file.

Using the MailMerge Client

To use the MailMerge client:

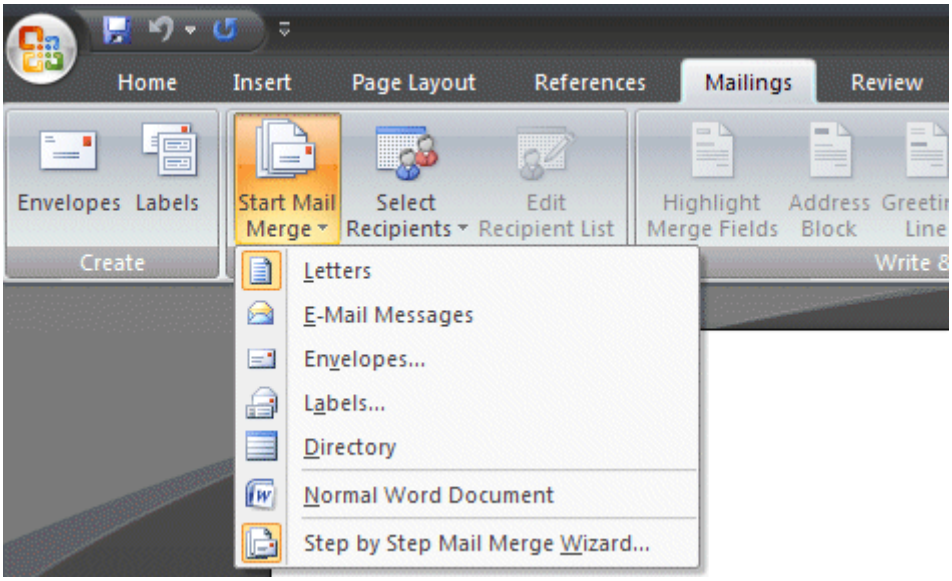
1. In Microsoft Word, open either the provided sample .doc file (located in the MailMerge Client installation folder), or create a new file from the template.

2. When creating the document, you must insert the **Work Phone** field in your document and in your recipients list. This is the fax number to send the document to.

   The sample document and the XLS file contain the Work Phone field.

3. Use the Mail Merge Wizard to create and send the final documents. If the Mail Merge wizard is not displayed:

   - In Word XP or 2003, select Tools > Letters and Mailing > Mail Merge.
   - In Word 2007, in the Mailings tab, click the Start Mail Merge button and select Step by Step Mail Merge Wizard.

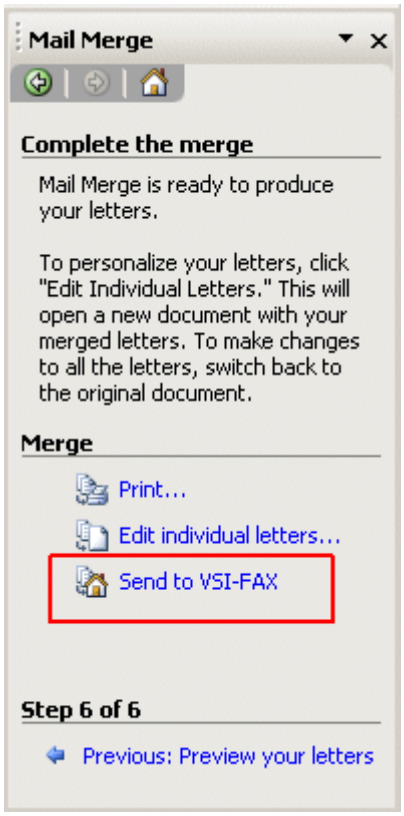


Warning

You **cannot** use the VSI-FAX MailMerge client to send faxes from Microsoft Word to a list of Outlook contacts.

Therefore, during the Select recipients step of the Mail Merge wizard, do **not** select the Select from Outlook contacts option.

4. For more information on mail merge, you can follow the Microsoft training to learn how to use mail merge in Word 2007 or the Microsoft training to learn how to use mail merge in Word 2003.
5. Once the Mail Merge wizard is open, follow the instructions provided by the wizard.
6. During the Completing the Merge step, select the Send to VSI-FAX option. Selecting this option will start the actual merging and submitting of the final documents.



During this final step, the desktop will be busy, making other processing somewhat slower.

Forms Overlay

Forms Overlay

You can specify forms to be overlaid onto selected pages of the resultant fax file. Form files may be of any type. More than one overlay file can be specified.

A form file is specified using the tag `ovl=<form_name>` or `ovs=<form_name>`, depending on whether the overlay form is local or on the server. An optional page range can be specified, which will indicate on which pages of the resultant fax file the form is to be overlaid. If no page range is specified, the form will overlay all pages in the resultant fax file. The page range is specified with the `fpg=<page_range>` tag. The first page of the form is the only page used in the overlay process. This page is overlaid on all specified pages in the resultant fax file.

For example, a letterhead could be overlaid onto the first page of a fax with this command:

```
vfx ... -t ovl=letterhd.tif -t fpg=1 ...
```

An invoice form could be overlaid onto all pages except the first one with this command:

```
vfx ... -t ovl=invoice.tif -t fpg=2- ...
```

You could overlay both a letterhead and an invoice form with the following command:

```
vfx ... -t ovl=letterhd.tif -t fpg=1 -t ovl=invoice.tif -t fpg=2 ...
```

Note
An overlay form can be specified in a tag or batch file (similar to all other VSI-FAX tags).

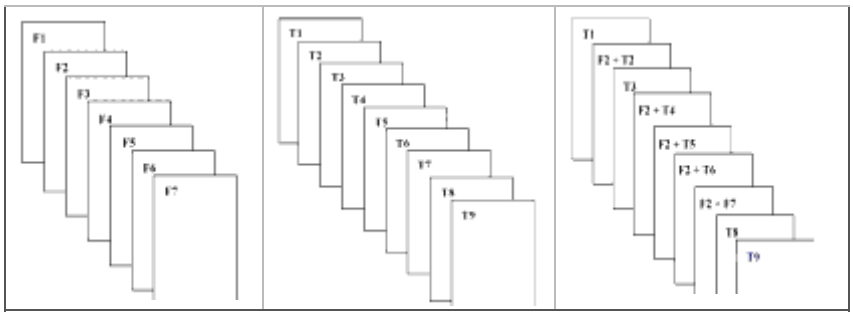
The management of overlay forms can be simplified by combining them into a single multi-page file. In this way, each page of the file corresponds to a particular overlay form (such as a purchase order, invoice or past due notice) that can then be referenced by its page number. This eliminates the need to manage multiple overlay files and allows integrators to maintain a consistent reference when specifying which overlay form to use. Furthermore, changes can be made to an existing forms file without requiring it to be rebuilt from scratch, as long as it maintains the same page order sequence. By consolidating the overlay forms into a single forms file, you have the consistency of a known filename and the flexibility to specify the overlay page number (or numbers) to be used on the target document.

Now you are ready to integrate the overlay utility into your application's VSI-FAX interface. You can either specify that a single form be overlaid onto multiple pages of the target file, that multiple overlays be overlaid onto multiple pages or that a single overlay be overlaid onto a page range or selected pages.

Single overlay

This example begins with two files: form overlay `form1.tif` (pages F1-7) and text overlay `target.tif` (pages T1-9).

Form1.tif	target.tif	result.tif



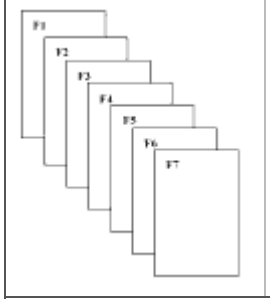
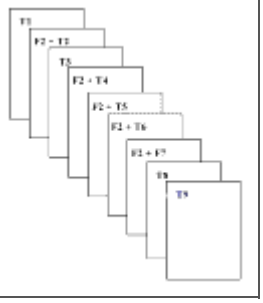
The `result.tif` output file is created by entering the following on a single line:

```
vtifftool overlay -E fine -o result.tif form1.tif:2 target.tif:2,4-7
```

Notice that page 2 of `form1.tif` has been overlaid onto pages 2, 4, 5, 6, and 7 of `target.tif` to produce the `result.tif` output file When this file is faxed, the fax will appear as if the form overlay and the text overlay are one a single image.

Multiple overlays

To perform multiple overlays from both `forms1.tif` and`target.tif` to `result.tif`, type the following:

form1.tif	target.tif	result.tif
		

The `result.tif` output file is created by entering the following on a single line:

```
vtifftool overlay -E fine -o - forms1.tif:2 target.tif:2,4-6 | vtifftool overlay -E
fine -o result.tif forms1.tif:5 -:7,9
```

Because the `vtifftool` overlay utility can only process one overlay operation at a time, the first execution of vtifftool uses a`-` character as the argument to its output switch (`-o`). This redirects output to the standard output device (`stdout`). The output is then piped to the second execution of the `vtifftool`, which reads it in as standard input (`stdin`), performs the overlay operation onto it, then writes its output to the file result.tif.

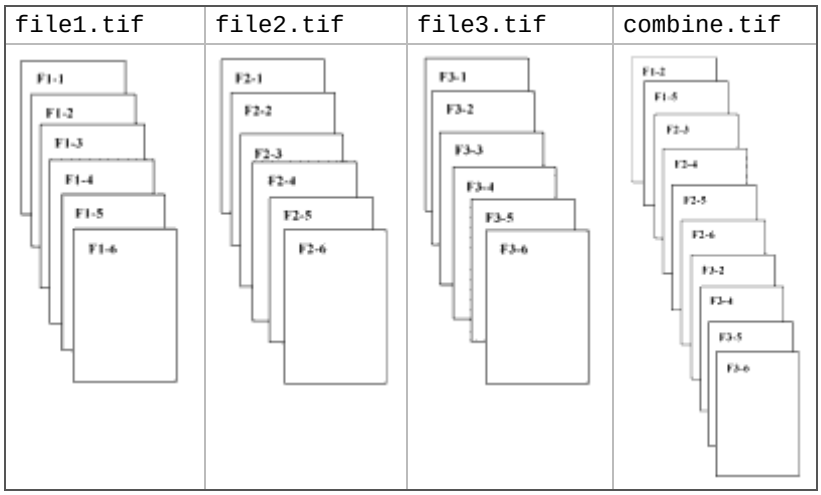
In this example, the - character in the final `vtifftool` argument (`-:7,9`) tells `vtifftool` to read from the standard input device (`stdin`) instead of a file.

The result of this procedure is that page 2 of `forms1.tif` has been overlaid onto pages 2, 4, 5, and 6 of the `target.tif`. The output of this operation has then been piped to the second procedure, in which page 5 of `forms1.tif` has been overlaid onto its standard input to create the output file `result.tif`. The original `target.tif` and `forms1.tif` are left in their original state and can therefore be reused later.

Selective merging

Under certain circumstances, you may need to extract selected pages from one received fax file and merge them with a second file to create a new output file that can then be faxed from VSI-FAX. In this instance you would use the `merge` option of the `vtifftool` utility, which will allow you to select specific pages from multiple files and merge them into a single document.

This example begins with three multi-page files, `file1.tif` (page F1), `file2.tif` (page F2) and `file3.tif` (page F3). A new file `combine.tif` will comprise pages 2 and 5 from `file1.tif`, pages 3 through 6 from `file2.tif` and pages 2, 4, 5, and 6 from `file3.tif`.



The `combine.tif` output file is created by entering the following on a single line:

```
vtifftool merge -E fine -o combine.tif file1.tif:2,5 file2.tif:3-6 file3.tif:2,4-6
```

Notice that `combine.tif` has been created, which contains pages from `file1.tif, file2.tif,` and `file3.tif` arranged in the order was specified. The `combine.tif` file can now be faxed with VSI-FAX like any other faxable file.

Creating electronic business forms

Before you begin converting your business forms into electronic image files, organize these forms in a page sequence for later reference. You can either scan or fax the forms to create the overlays. These methods are described in:

- Manual fax scanning
- Scanner support

Note
You must consolidate your forms into a single file and maintain the original page order as they are converted to a TIFF image file.

Manual fax scanning

Collect your forms together in the proper page sequence, and fax them to your fax server. View the received fax file to confirm that each page is intact and aligned correctly. You can expect a slight shrinkage (about 1/6 inch) of the scanned image versus the original document due to the scan line rendering. This is a normal occurrence with any faxed document. The slight shrinkage should not matter because the size of the text overlays will be in proportion to the original document.

You may need to make small positioning adjustments to the text before it overlays exactly onto your imaged form. You can do this with either PCL (Hewlett Packard LaserJet) or PostScript (Level 1) codes that use both horizontal and vertical positioning.

The final step is to remove the fax header that was added to each page during transmission. To do this:

1. Log in as root or vsifax and set the VSI-FAX environment.

   Note

   This example assumes that you renamed the received form file as `form.tif` and that this file is located in (`$VSIFAX/faxq/vsifax`), which is the Fax Box directory of user vsifax.

2. Use the `vtifftool` utility to remove the fax header from the multi-page `form.tif` file as follows:

   ```
   cd $VSIFAX/faxq/vsifax vtifftool clear -E fine -m 0.3i -o overlay.tif form.tif
   ```

   The purpose of `-m 0.3i` is to instruct `vtifftool` to clear 0.3 inches from the top of the page. You may have to reduce this amount to 0.2 inches (`-m 0.2i`)depending on the output of your particular fax machine.

Scanner support

You can also use a document scanner to combine forms into a single TIFF image file that can be saved on the VSI-FAX system. Keep in mind that the TIFF file type must be set to one supported by VSI-FAX, as defined by these parameters:

Compression	CCITT G3 (required) Aldus G3 Mac PacBits uncompressed
Maximum Resolution	200x200 dpi
Imaging	Black and White (No Grayscale Support)

Creating faxable signature and logo files

VSI-FAX supports both shared and private logo and signature files. Files that you want to include in a document must reside in one of two locations:

Public (globally available) files are stored in the `$VSIFAX/lib/images` directory.

Private (accessible only by the owning user) files are stored on the user's local hard drive. To create a signature or logo file, follow these steps:

1. Do one of the following:

If	Do this
Creating a signature file	Write your signature in black ink on a blank piece of white paper. The signature should be no less than one inch from the top and one inch from the left of the page.
Creating a logo file	Copy your logo onto a faxable piece of paper with the logo no less than one inch from the top and one inch from the left of the page.

2. Fax this page to your VSI-FAX user account from a physical fax machine. Make sure you use fine resolution mode in order to obtain the best possible image.

Note

By default, all received faxes will be stored in user vsifax's inbox (`$VSIFAX/faxq/vsifax`) in TIFF file format.

3. Open the received TIFF file and measure the x and y coordinates of the upper-left corner of the logo or signature, as well as the image area width and height.
4. Create a faxable signature or logo file using the `vtifftool cut` command.

   For example, to create a faxable logo file (`logo.tif`) by cropping all unused white space from the previous example, enter the following on a single line:

   ```
   vtifftool cut -E fine -x 1.5i -y 1.0i -w 5.25i -h 2.0i -o logo.tif rawlogo.tif
   ```

   The output file contains only the signature, so the content of the file is only 5.25" wide and 2" high. All unused white space and additional file information has been removed.

   Alternatively, you can use the `vtifftool mksig` command as follows:

   ```
   vtifftool mksig -o logo.tif rawlogo.tif
   ```
5. To make this a public image file (available to all VSI-FAX users), upload it to the `$VSIFAX/lib/images` directory using the `vupload image` command.

For example, to upload the logo file from the previous example, enter:

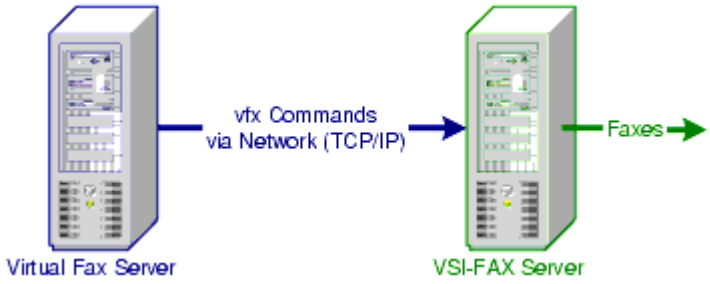
```
vupload image logo.tif
```

You are now ready to include your signature or logo file in a faxable document.

Virtual Fax Server

Virtual Fax Server

The virtual fax server is a remote `vfx` command line client. It includes all the functionality of a full fax server except that you cannot connect fax devices to it or send faxes directly from it. You must connect your virtual fax server to a full fax server, via a network, to complete your integration.



Do I need this?

If you intend to use `vfx` commands as your delivery mechanism (Refer to Delivering the fax envelope for more information) and you need to issue these commands remotely (i.e., from a different IP address than the fax server IP address), you must install a virtual fax server on the remote computer or workstation.

Capabilities and limitations

Once the virtual fax server is installed, you can issue `vfx` commands just as if you were logged directly into the fax server. You have access to all the commands and utilities available in a full fax server (e.g., administrative commands and reporting utilities).

However, you cannot connect fax devices directly to a virtual fax server.

To submit faxes from the Virtual Fax Server (VFS) machine, the VSI-FAX license installed must support Virtual Fax Server and the IP Address or the DNS Name of the VFS machine must be enterered in the VSI-FAX database. Any user submitting faxes from the VFS machine must be a licensed VSI-FAX user.

When issuing VSI-FAX command from the VFS machine you can direct the commands to the full fax server by adding a `-H <hostname or IP>` to the command line or by setting the Hostname parameter in the `vsifax.ini` file to the hostname or IP address of the full fax server.

Requirements

Virtual fax servers can be installed on any supported platform (e.g., Linux, Unix, or Windows).

Virtual fax servers use a special VSI-FAX license supporting Virtual Fax Server, which you must obtain from your VSI-FAX authorized reseller or directly from Esker before you can install it.

In order to send or receive faxes, the virtual fax server and the full fax server must share the same local area or wide area network.

Note
If you are using a WAN, make sure that any gateways or firewalls allow port 2996 to pass through.

See also
Refer to Sending a test fax to a fax machine for virtual fax server installation instructions.

Configuring the Virtual Fax Server

To use the VFS software you must install the VFS software and provide its IP address or DNS Name on the full server. Check that the full server license supports Virtual Fax Server. Verify the hostname to which the VFS directs VSI-FAX commands. Check that the users who will be submitting VSI-FAX commands from the VFS are registered as licensed users on the full server.

To configure a Virtual Fax Server:

1. Install the Virtual Fax Server (VFS) software on a supported platform.
2. Check that the installed VSI-FAX license supports Virtual Fax Server by issuing the `vfxadmin license -l` command. Check the value for the number of Virtual Fax Servers supported (num vfs). If this is equal to 0 , you must contact your Esker Sales Representative and buy a new VSI-FAX license.
3. Edit the VSI-FAX license on the fax server by issuing the `vfxadmin license` command and entering the serial number, activation key, and IP address of the VFS machine(s) when prompted.
4. Verify that the hostname parameter in the `vsifax.ini` file on the Virtual Fax Server is set to the IP address or hostname of the full fax server.

   The VSI-FAX commands issued on the VFS machine are directed to the server named by the Hostname parameter in the vsifax.ini file. You can check which hostname the commands are currently directed to by issuing the `vfxstat -W` command. The response from `vfxstat -W` will have the format user@hostname. If the hostname is incorrect, modify the Hostname parameter in the vsifax.ini file. You can override the hostname that the commands are directed to by adding the `-H <hostname or IP>` switch to the command line.
5. Verify that the users who will submit faxes from the VFS machine to the VSI-FAX server are licensed users.

   Any user who issues VSI-FAX commands from the VFS machine, other than the vsifax or root user, must be a licensed user on the VSI-FAX server. You can do any of the following to determine if a user is currently licensed:

   - Issue the `vfxadmin user -l` command on the VSI-FAX server.
   - Issue the `vadmin user -l` command on the Virtual Fax Server and check the value in the Lic column.
   - Look to see if the Licensed check box under the General tab of the User icon in the VSI-FAX Server Administration tool is checked.

Notes
A version three VFS can work with a version four VSI-FAX full server if the vsinet process is running on the VSI-FAX server. However, the vsinet process is not available on versions above V4.2.1 B304 .

A version four VFS cannot work with a version three VSI-FAX full server.

If you have two VSI-FAX servers, you can use the license from each VSI-FAX server to make the servers into virtual fax servers of each other. To make a VSI-FAX server, called server1, into a virtual fax server of another VSI-FAX server, called server2, provide the IP address of server1 in the license table of server2, and then provide the IP address of server2 in the license table of server1. For this, use the `vfxadmin license` command on both servers.

lp Spooler (Unix Only)

lp Spooler (Unix Only)

The `vfx` command is modeled after the Unix `lp` spooler command. The similarities between the two allow you to submit a fax as easily as printing a document.

Integration is accomplished by using an lp-compatible printer interface script. All Unix and Linux operating systems, with the exception of IBM AIX, support ASCII text printer interface scripts. IBM AIX systems use a database architecture that requires their printer interface scripts to be compiled. For AIX IBM interface scripts, refer to the IBM AIX documentation.

Creating a printer destination for faxing

In order to use the lp spooler for fax interrogations, you need to create a printer destination called `fax`. The name can be anything that works for your environment. This printer destination is created the same way a regular printer would be created. The fax printer that you create should have a device port of `/dev/null` and a printer type of ASCII (or another generic type).

When you create the fax printer destination, the operating system automatically puts a default printer script for that printer in the interfaces directory. On most, but not all Unix and Linux systems, the interfaces directory is:

`/usr/spool/lp/admins/lp/interfaces`

Refer to your operating system documentation for additional information about adding an ASCII printer to your system.

Creating a custom printer interface script

Once you have successfully added the new fax printer destination to your system, replace or modify the default interface script to suit your particular environment and fax requirements. There are two methods for implementing this interface script, each with its own unique advantages: LP faxing and LP merge faxing.

lp faxing

The first and most common option is to use the Unix `lp` command. Typically, the `lp` command accepts several command line options that work well for sending a fax. In order for lp faxing to work correctly, two arguments must be passed to the interface script:

- Fax number
- Name of the file you want to fax

The Unix `lp` command allows the use of the `-o` argument, which we will use to specify the fax number. The filename can either be explicitly listed or a file can be redirected to the `lp` command. Either method works for lp faxing.

When creating the interface script, the most important line is the `vfx` command line. This is where options can be added to make the lp faxing work in your environment. The sample script (Refer to lp faxing sample interface script for more information) uses only a few options (login name, fax number and the file name). Additional options could be added that would include a cover page and a user's default profile settings to send the fax. All command line options available to the `vfx` command are also available within the interface script.

See also
Refer to *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation for additional information about the `vfx` command.

lp merge faxing

The second method is the lp merge faxing method, which allows you to create a mail merge text stream to personalize information to send to multiple destinations.

You can use this script to overlay forms onto selected pages of documents, such as purchase orders or quotes.

lp faxing sample interface script

This sample interface script replaces the default script used by the fax printer destination. It allows users to specify the fax number on the `lp` command line. This allows the specified document to be faxed.

Important
The sample script that is shown here is a sample. It will not work in every possible instance. It does demonstrate how and what an interface script should do.

When using the Unix `lp` command for faxing, a command line would typically be something like:

```
lp -d fax -o <fax_number> <file_name>
```

For example, to fax the `/etc/motd` file to fax number 111-222-3333, enter:

```
lp -d fax -o 111-222-3333 /etc/motd
```

Sample script:

```
# Set the VSI-FAX environment
 . /etc/vsifax.sh
 # Store the login name of the submitter
 LOGIN=$2
 # Extract the fax number
 FAXNUM="$5"
 # Extract the files to be faxed
 shift 5
 FILES="$*"
 # Submit the fax request
 vfx -U $LOGIN -n "$FAXNUM" $FILES 2>&1 | mailx -s <subject> $LOGIN
 # Exit script
 exit 0
```

Note
In the previous example script, `<subject>` is any user-defined character string you want for your email subject line.

lp merge faxing sample interface script

This script allows you to send different sections of the file to different recipients by creating a text stream. VSI-FAX provides an embedded fax command that allows you to specify the fax dialstring, the coversheet information, and the coversheet to use for each recipient. The order in which fax commands appear is critical to its successful implementation. Below is a list of available tag values that can be specified using the @+VFX embedded command:

Tag	Description
`cvr`	Coversheet to use
`tfn`	Recipient's fax number
`tnm`	Recipient's name
`tco`	Recipient's company
`ffn`	Sender's return fax number
`fnm`	Sender's name

Tag	Description
fco	Sender's company
fvn	Sender's voice number
sub	Coversheet subject line limited to a maximum of 63 characters

To utilize embedded commands, include them within the text data stream at the appropriate points within the pages.

See also
Refer to Tag files and Batch files.

The power of lp spooler integration is the ability to specify which pages go to which recipients and create multiple fax requests when necessary.

Sample Printer Interface Script:

```
# Set the VSI-FAX environment
. /etc/vsifax3.sh
# Store the login name of the submitter
LOGIN=$2
# Extract the file to be faxed
shift 5
FILE=$1
# Submit the fax request
vfx -U $LOGIN <$FILE 2>&1 | mailx -s <subject> $LOGIN
```

Using XML-F

Using XML-F

Note
With VSI-FAX 5.0, API development has moved to C/C++. This change will not affect your current SDK development. Java, Visual Basic, XML-F, C and C++ continue to be supported in version 5.1 and on.

The C/C++ Client API Reference in c_api.pdf in the \docs folder of the VSI-FAX CD-ROM.

Extensible Markup Language (XML) comprises various Data Type Definitions (DTDs). Each DTD is a set of tags for describing a particular collection of data. In XML, one DTD is created for each collection of data that requires description. For example, to create an XML language for Accounts Payable, one DTD would be required to describe the venders, one to describe the purchase orders, and another to describe invoices, etc.

A collection of data is generally accompanied by its DTD whenever it is stored or transferred from one place to another, creating "documents that know themselves." The inclusion of the DTD means that the content or meaning of the data is embedded in the document in a way that is human-legible and easily interpreted by any XML enabled software.

Esker has gone one step further and has proposed a set of DTDs for network fax transactions called XML-F. This interface is a simple, powerful way to pass fax transactions to and from fax servers. It is based on four simple structures that allow any conforming application to:

- Send a fax
- Get the status of a sent fax
- Cancel a fax
- Get fax resources

XML-F uses eight XML document types to implement these four features: four requests and four responses. Each feature has a corresponding request and response document.

For clarity, the examples in the remainder of this section uses simplified XML-F document types.

See also
Refer to *XML-F DTDs* in the Reference Addendum documentation for complete DTD listings.

The xmlf command

Synopsis

```
$VSIFAX/bin/xmlf [-h <URL>] [-o <file>] [-t {html | text | xml}] <file> [<attachment>]
```

Description

xmlf is the transport that sends a fax file to the server for transmission.

Options

-h <URL>	Fax server Universal Resource Locator (URL). Default is local host.
-o <file>	The name of the file to put the response from the send operation. Default is displaying the response on the screen.

-t {html | text | xml}	Response format.
<file>	The name of the XML file you are sending to the server.
<attachment>	The name of a file you want to add.

Notes

When entering a URL, the following format is required:

```
[transport://] <host> [:port number]
```

Where:

transport:	vxmld.
<host>	Name of the fax server.
port number	Port number that the fax server uses to send faxes.

Fax-submit document

The fax-submit document describes the elements necessary to set up and send a fax on an XML-F compliant system. The fax-submit document has the following basic structure (this example is simplified):

```
fax-submit
     account (required)
         id (required)
         subid (zero or one)
         mail-address (zero or one)
     recipient (one or more)
         personal-name (zero or one)
         company-name (zero or one)
         fax-number or canonical-fax (required)
         voice-number or canonical-voice (zero or one)
     sender (required)
         personal-name (required)
         company-name (zero or one)
         fax-number or canonical-fax (zero or one)
         voice-number or canonical-voice (zero or one)
     subject (zero or one)
     content (required)
         body (zero or more)
     application-reference (zero or one)
     command-reference (zero or one)
```

Element	Description
account	The account contains the information necessary to identify the user of the service. Authentication is left to the transport and implementation, the account structure contains an ID intended to identify the billing entity and a sub-ID to be used for grouping of departments or users within the billing entity. The account also specifies a mail-address that is an email channel available for the fax service to use for error or other messages.
recipient	The recipient defines one or more people for whom this fax transmission is ultimately intended. A fax submission must have at least one recipient, however, the recipient need only have fax-number defined.
sender	The sender entry is required, with at least the personal name entered for a sender.
subject	The subject is optional.

Element	Description
content	The content element contains zero or more body elements. Body elements must contain a filename attribute and may specify associated content-type (RFC 2046) and content-transfer-encoding (base64 or none).
application reference	An application-reference tag is defined to permit the submitting application to provide an arbitrary application-specific reference to this fax request. This reference tag may be used to request status information on this fax submission

Finally, in XML-F, all requests carry a command-reference, which is intended for the sending system to uniquely identify the particular request. This is useful for debugging and matching up particular responses with particular requests when the system is used asynchronously.

The following is an example of a completed send document:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE fax-submit SYSTEM "fax-submit.dtd">
<fax-submit resolution="fine" coversheet ="yes">
    <account>
        <id>
            Filmore5455
        </id>
        <subid>
            David Filmore
        </subid>
        <mail-address>
            filmore@esker.com
        </mail-address>
    </account>
    <email-notification when="on-success">
            filemore@esker.com
    </email-notification>
    <sender>
        <personal-name>
            David Filmore
        </personal-name>
        <company-name>
            Willy Wonka Chocolates, Inc.
        </company-name>
        <fax-number>
            237-0998
        </fax-number>
        <voice-number>
            238-9873
        </voice-number>
    </sender>
    <recipient>
        <personal-name>
            Rob Juergens
        </personal-name>
        <canonical-fax>
            <country-code>
                011
            </country-code>
            <area-code>
                987
            </area-code>
            <local-number>
                242-1234
            </local-number>
        </canonical-fax>
        <voice-number>
            011-987-242-5678
```

```
        </voice-number>
    </recipient>
    <subject>
        Good Looking XML...
    </subject>
    <content>
        <body filename="inline.txt">
            Some people are destined to discover that when they get to the end of
time, there they are.
        </body>
        <body filename="inline.txt" content-type="text/plain" content-transfer-
encoding="base64">
            VGhpcyB3YXMgYmFzZTY0IGVuY29kZWQgPGludmFsaWQ+PC9pbnZhbGlkPg==
        </body>
        <body filename="inline.txt">
            This is some text that we think would make for a wonderfully interesting
fax body had anyone had time to actually think up something fun and interesting to
say. Or should anyone ever decide to read it.
        </body>
    </content>
    <command-reference>
        xxs234234s
    </command-reference>
 </fax-submit>
```

Upon successful receipt of a valid fax-submit, a fax-submit-response will be returned.

Fax-submit-response document

Upon receipt of a fax-submit request, an XML-F service should respond by providing a fax-submit-response. This response is used to acknowledge receipt of the fax submission upon parsing and validation of the request. The response is used to provide a server-side reference. It is comprises the following structure (this example is simplified):

```
fax-submit-response
     request-results      (required
     service-reference (required)
     application-reference (zero or one)
     command-reference (zero or one)
```

Element	Description
request results	The request-results provide information on the results of the fax-submit. Request-results contain attributes to indicate the status of the request (normal, warning, or failed) and the reason for the status. The data attached to the request-results entity provides an ad hoc message back to the application.
service reference	This is a unique reference assigned to a particular fax submission by the service provider. This is the best reference for the user application to use when requesting status or when canceling a request.
application reference	This is the optional (but recommended) reference that the submitting application assigned to the fax request triggering this response. This reference may be used to get status or to cancel the request if the application has not received a fax-submit-response (and therefore no service-reference would be known).

Fax-status document

The fax-status document is used by an application to request status on a service about a particular fax request. The fax-status request can be used to request short and detailed status reports in either XML or text-formatted form. As well, the fax-status request can ask the service to mail the resulting report to an email address.

The application can either use the application-reference or the service-reference when referring to this request. This permits the submitting application to issue status requests without having to wait or process a fax-submit-response document prior to asking for status. In the event the fax-submit-response is never received, the application must use the application-reference to get information on the request.

The fax-status comprises the following structure (this example is simplified):

```
fax-status
     account (required)
         id (required)
         subid (zero or one)
         mail-address (zero or one)
         email-to (zero or more)
     service-reference (must specify either
     application-reference service or app ref)
     command-reference (zero or one)
```

This is an example of a completed fax status document:

```
 <?xml version="1.0"?>
 <!DOCTYPE fax-status SYSTEM "fax-status.dtd">
 <fax-status results-format="xml" report-type="full">
     <account>
         <id>
             Filmore5455
         </id>
         <subid>
             David Filmore
         </subid>
         <mail-address>
             filmore@esker.com
         </mail-address>
     </account>
     <service-reference>
         1011
     </service-reference>
     <command-reference>
         xxs234235s
     </command-reference>
 </fax-status>
```

Fax-status-response document

The fax-status-response document provides the detailed information about what happened (or is happening) to a fax request on an XML-F service. The basic structure for the fax-status-response is as follows (this example is simplified):

```
fax-status-response
     request-results (required)
         status (one of...) (required)
             {short-status}
         job-status (required)
             {full-status}
         job-status (required)
         attempt-status (one or more)
     recipient (required)
         date (required)
         csi (zero or one)
     result (required)
         short-message (required)
         long-message (zero or one)
     service-reference (required)
     application-reference (zero or one)
     command-reference (zero or one)
```

Fax-cancel document

The fax-cancel document is used by a sending application to cancel a previously submitted fax request. This is a sample fax cancel document:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE fax-cancel SYSTEM "fax-cancel.dtd">
<fax-cancel>
      <account>
            <id>
                  Filmore5455
            </id>
            <subid>
                  David Filmore
            </subid>
            <mail-address>
                  filmore@esker.com
            </mail-address>
      </account>
      <service-reference>
            1011
      </service-reference>
      <command-reference>
            xxs234236s
      </command-reference>
</fax-cancel>
```

Inbound and Outbound Fax Filter

Inbound and Outbound Fax Filter

VSI-FAX uses a file called rejects.lst to screen incoming and outgoing faxes. This can be useful as a spam filter for incoming faxes, automatically terminating any call having a pre-listed Transmitting Subscriber ID (TSI) or Caller ID (ANI). Outbound call rejection is based on dialstring.

Note
ANI rejection is predicated on the ability to collect ANI information, currently available with Dialogic Brooktrout fax boards.

Creating the reject list

To create the list of all inbound faxes to be rejected based on TSI or ANI

1. Using a text editor, open %VSIFAX%\lib\rejects.lst.
2. At the bottom of the file, enter any TSI or ANI (for inbound calls), or dialstring (for outbound calls) to be rejected. Use the formatting:

```
TSI:<inbound tsi-to-reject>
ANI:<inbound callerid-to-reject>
OUT:<outbound dial-string-to-reject>
```

Notes

Alpha characters used for TSI are not case sensitive.

There can be more than one "out" line in the file. Any job with a dialstring matching any "out" entries are rejected with a result code of REMREJ.

The filter supports wildcards: ? matches any single character and * matches to end of string. (Any characters after the * will be ignored.) A TSI of ! indicates match an empty TSI string.

An exact match is required unless you use wildcards.

Examples

```
TSI:Zebra Pharm*
TSI:XYZ Manufacturing
TSI:222-555-111?
TSI:!
ANI:2223334444
ANI:(222) 333-4*
ANI:222-555-11?4
OUT:2226661111
OUT:(222) 666-2*
```

Note

ANI string formatting is dependent upon several factors, including board types, PBXs, etc. Check the ANI format received at your site for use in the rejects.lst file.

3. Save the file. You do not have to restart the server.

Font handling

Font handling

Although most PostScript-generating applications are not dependent on the resolution of the output device, some of these applications will perform better if aware of the output resolution. Since fine fax resolution of 200 x 200 dpi is lower than the typical laser printer's resolution of 300 x 300 dpi or 600 x 600 dpi, some documents will look different when printed by different devices. If your application offers a choice of resolutions, select 200 x 200 dots per inch.

PCL5e (Enhanced) Fonts

The fax server supports full PCL5 (HP LaserJet III and LaserJet IIIsi) and PCL5e (HP LaserJet 4/5) features including:

Bitmaps

Orientation	Spacing	PtSize	Pitch	Style	Stroke Typeface
Portrait	Fixed	16.67	8.5	Upright	Medium Line-Printer (0)
Landscape	Fixed	16.67	8.5	Upright	Medium Line-Printer (0)

Symbol Sets

Roman-8 (8U)	Latin-5 (5N)
PC-8 (10U)	Spanish-1 (2S)
PC-8-DN (11U)	German (1G)
US-ASCII 90U)	French (1F)
PC-850 (12U) and ECMA-94 (0N)	Norwegian (0D)
UK (1E, Swedish (0S), Italian (0I), Latin-2 (2N))	

Scaleable Typeface

Typeface	Stroke	Style	Typeface	Stroke	Style
Courier (4099)	Medium Medium Bold Bold	Regular Italic Regular Italic	CG-Times (4101)	Medium Medium Bold Bold	Regular Italic Regular Italic
Letter Gothic (4102)	Medium Medium Bold	Regular Italic Regular	Antique Olive (4168)	Medium Medium Bold	Regular Italic Regular
Univers	Medium	Regular	Univers Condensed	Medium	Regular

Typeface	Stroke	Style	Typeface	Stroke	Style
(4148)	Medium Bold Bold	Italic Regular Italic	(4148)	Medium Bold Bold	Italic Regular Italic
CG-Omega (4113)	Medium Medium Bold Bold	Regular Italic Regular Italic	Garamond (4197)	Medium Medium Bold Bold	Regular Italic Regular Italic
Albertus (4362)	Bold Extra Bold	Regular Regular	Coronet (4116)	Medium	Italic
Marigold (4297)	Medium	Regular	Clarindon Condensed (4140)	Bold	Regular
Symbol (16686)	Medium	Regular	Wingdings (31402)	Medium	Regular
Arial (16602)	Medium Medium Bold Bold	Regular Italic Regular Italic	Times New Roman (16901)	Medium Medium Bold Bold	Regular Italic Regular Italic
Prestige (4104)	Medium	Regular			

Note
Courier and Letter Gothic are the only mono-spaced (i.e., fixed-width) fonts available. Integrations that require compressed print may find the output more readable if the Letter Gothic font is used.

PostScript fonts

The fax server supports all Adobe Type 1 fonts, including those provided in a PostScript document. The following is a list of built-in fonts that are available:

AvantGarde Book AvantGarde Demi AvantGarde BookOblique AvantGarde DemiOblique	Proportional	Bookman Light Bookman Demi Bookman LightItalic Bookman DemiItalic	Proportional
Courier Courier Bold	Fixed-width	Courier Oblique Courier BoldOblique	Fixed-width
Helvetica	Proportional	Helvetica Bold Helvetica Oblique Helvetica Narrow Oblique Helvetica Narrow- BoldOblique Helvetica BoldOblique	Proportional
Helvetica Narrow	Proportional	Helvetica Narrow Bold	Proportional
NewCenturySchlbk Roman	Proportional	NewCenturySchlbk Bold NewCenturySchlbk Italic NewCenturySchlbk Bold Italic	Proportional
Palatino Roman Palatino Bold Palatino Italic Palatino BoldItalic	Proportional	Symbol	Proportional
Times Roman Times Bold Times Italic Times BoldItalic	Proportional	ZapfChancery MediumItalic	Proportional

ZapfDingbatsTimes Roman	Proportional		

Ordering DID Service

Ordering DID Service

To order DID Service in the United States:

- Determine what your DID requirements are and how many simultaneous calls you are going to support.
- How many phone numbers will you need to reserve? The minimum block of phone numbers offered by most major regional DID service providers is 20.
- How many simultaneous inbound calls do you want to support? This will determine the number of DID trunk lines you need to order. You have the option of picking a block of numbers that will be serviced by a specific number of DID trunk lines. These DID trunk lines will work in a rollover process whereby if someone dials one of the numbers in your block and the first trunk line is busy, it will roll over to the next trunk line and so on until it finds an idle trunk line. This is automatically supported by your DID service provider and does not require that you purchase any additional equipment.

Before you place your DID service order with your service provider, you need to know how to request the options described in:

- 2-Wire DID interface
- DTMF signaling
- Wink start
- Number of DTMF digits to outpoll

2-Wire DID interface

This specifies the physical connection from the DID service provider and your local terminating point.

DTMF signaling

This specifies the type of signaling that your local equipment is expecting. Choices are rotary, pulse and multi-frequency.

Wink start

This is a signal from the DID service provider to the DID interface unit that tells it a DID call is ready to be received.

Number of DTMF digits to outpoll

This specifies the number of DTMF digits that you want to receive prior to accepting the call and is used by the fax software to identify the number being called and resolve a name or department from the DID table. Although you can specify how many digits you want to receive, the maximum number is 7. The actual number will be based on your particular environment.

Contact your service provider and specify that you are ordering a DID trunk line.

If your current PBX phone switch does not have provisions for supporting DID service, you need to contact a DID interface equipment manufacturer to purchase an interface unit. DID trunk lines are dedicated lines from the service provider that require a special interface at the customer's site. The interface equipment is available in models that

support from one to sixteen individual DID trunk lines. Some models also come with an out-dial transfer port that allows you to connect a standard dial line for outbound dialing using the same modem.

Roxbury fonts

Roxbury fonts

VSI-FAX provides a mechanism for using and managing the Roxbury family of fonts. VSI-FAX provides the following Roxbury fonts:

- Roxbury pica (regular) 10 cpi
- Roxbury bold 10 cpi
- Roxbury italic 10 cpi
- Roxbury italic bold 10 cpi
- Roxbury compressed 16.7 cpi

These are fixed-width bit-mapped fonts designed to look good at either standard or fine resolution. These fonts are used in the following places:

- `eptotif` uses them to image text files.
- `pcltotif` uses them for text mode conversion. In this mode, the Roxbury fonts are compiled into PCL soft-fonts, which can be selected with the appropriate PCL font-selection command.
- `vtifftool` uses them in the header command to add a header to pages of a TIFF file.
- FIMs (except FoDC) use them to create the header at the top of sent fax pages.

The Roxbury fonts are a mixture of character sets. The low-order half (chars 0x20 through 0x7f) are the same as the standard ASCII character set. The top-half (chars 0x80 through 0xff), is a mixture of the PC line-drawing characters (chars 0xb0 through 0xdf) and various non-standard characters.

These non-standard characters are not the same as the standard PC character set or the standard ISO multi-lingual character set (ISO8859).

Esker provides these fonts as both the original text files describing these fonts and as compiled font files (`.fnt` files) usable by `eptotif` and the FIMs, as well as compiled PCL soft-fonts (`.sft` files). Esker also provides a font compiler program, which will compile the text font descriptions into new `.fnt` and `.sft` files.

These various fonts and source files allow you modify the Roxbury font to support special international symbols (e.g., Spanish cedilla, the German ess-tsett, etc.)

The compiled Roxbury fonts, source files and font compiler are located in the `$VSIFAX/lib/fonts` directory:

`fontcomp`	Font compiler
`roxypica.txt`	Roxbury pica font description file
`roxyital.txt`	Roxbury italic font description file
`roxycomp.txt`	Roxbury compressed font description file
`roxypica.fnt`	Compiled Roxbury pica font
`roxybold.fnt`	Compiled Roxbury bold font
`roxyital.fnt`	Compiled Roxbury italic font
`roxybdit.fnt`	Compiled Roxbury italic bold font
`roxycomp.fnt`	Compiled Roxbury compressed font

See also
Refer to *Command Reference* in the Reference Addendum documentation for additional information about the font compiler.

The compiled PCL soft-fonts files are located in the `$VSIFAX/lib/fxpcl` directory:

`roxypica.sft`	Roxbury pica soft-font
`roxybold.sft`	Roxbury bold soft-font
`roxyital.sft`	Roxbury italic soft-font
`roxybdit.sft`	Roxbury italic bold soft-font
`roxycomp.sft`	Roxbury compressed soft-font

Note
The bold and italic bold fonts are generated from the corresponding non-bold font descriptions.

Compiling Roxbury fonts

Typically, you would modify the font files to contain those you specifically need, then enter the following commands:

```
>cd $VSIFAX/lib/fonts
 fontcomp -v -i roxyital
 fontcomp -v -i roxypica
 fontcomp -v -i roxycom
```

This compiles the various fonts and installs them into the proper directories.

The `eptotif` program automatically loads these fonts from the fonts directory, unless it is invoked with the `-Z noloadfonts` option, in which case it will use internal linked-in versions of these fonts.

When the `pcltotif` program is invoked with the `-e` option (which is done when a file-type of `.txt` is used), it will load the corresponding soft (`.sft`) font for the various font selections.

By default, all FIMs except FoDC image the page header using an internal linked-in version of the roxybdit font (Roxbury italic bold). However, you can choose a different font for the page header by changing the `DEVICE:font-name=<font>` entry in the `$VSIFAX/lib/vsisrv.ini` file.

Tip
If you choose the Roxbury compressed font for your page headers (i.e., by setting `vsisrv.ini DEVICE:font-name=roxycomp`), you will be able to display up to 120 characters of user data in the header, as compared with 62 characters using other fonts.

See also
Customizing the fax header

Sample Unix and Linux Mount Commands

These CD-ROM mount commands are only examples. Your command arguments may be different depending on the file systems you have installed. In particular, if the `/cdrom` mount point does not exist, use `/mnt` in place of `/cdrom` in these examples. Consult your system administrator for the appropriate command to use for your installation.

Operating system	Command
Compaq	`mount -r /dev/rz4c /cdrom` `mount -r -t cdfs -o rrip /dev/rz4c /cdrom`
HP	`pfs_mount -o xlat=unix /dev/dsk/<device> /cdrom`
IBM	`mount -r -v cdrfs /dev/cd0 /cdrom`
NCR	`mount -F cdfs <cdrom-dev> /cdrom`

SCO	`mount -r /dev/cd0 /cdrom`
	`mount -r -f hsfs /dev/cd0 /cdrom`
	`mount -r HS /dev/cd0 /cdrom`

Sun	`mount -r hsfs /dev/sr0 /cdrom`

Fax Server Information Form

See the Annotated fax server information form for detailed information about filling out this form.

Licensing Information	
Information	**Entry**
Fax Server Serial Number	
Fax Server Activation Key	
Cover Page Information	
Information	**Entry**
Company Name	
Address 1	
Address 2	
Address 3	
Country	
Voice phone	
FAX phone	
Email	
Dialing Properties	
Information	**Entry**
Country Code	
Long Distance Access #	
Area Code	
Local Number Length	
Dial Prefix	
Dial Suffix	
Called Subscriber ID (CSI)	
Transmitting Station ID (TSI)	
Internet Email Servers	
Information	**Entry**
SMTP Server Name	
SMTP From Name	
POP3 Server Name	
POP3 User Name	
POP3 Password	
Fax Modem Properties	
Information	**Entry**
Queue name	
Description	
COM port	
Final Checks	
Question	**Entry**
Have you stopped all existing processes running on serial ports that you will be connecting your fax devices to?	

Licensing Information	
Is port 2996 dedicated to VSI-FAX?	